

國立交通大學

應用數學系

博士論文

二維與三維網格模型上的花樣生成問題



Patterns Generation Problems in Two and
Three-dimensional Lattice Models

研究生：林吟衡

指導教授：林松山 教授

中華民國九十六年六月

二維與三維網格模型上的花樣生成問題

**Patterns Generation Problems in Two and
Three-dimensional Lattice Models**

研究生：林吟衡

Student : Yin-Heng Lin

指導教授：林松山

Advisor : Song-Sun Lin

國立交通大學



A Dissertation

Submitted to Department of Applied Mathematics
College of Science

National Chiao Tung University
in Partial Fulfillment of Requirements
for the Degree of
Doctor of Philosophy
in
Applied Mathematics

June 2007

Hsinchu, Taiwan, Republic of China

中華民國九十六年六月

二維與三維網格模型上的花樣生成問題


學生：林吟衡

指導教授：林松山 教授

國立交通大學

應用數學系

摘要



本論文主要研究二維與三維的花樣生成問題。不論在二維或三維狀況中，適當給定局部花樣的次序可定義出次序矩陣，此次序矩陣的特殊結構可使得較大有限花樣所對應的高次次序矩陣被有系統的生成出來。給定某局部花樣子集，由次序矩陣可定義出轉化矩陣。利用低次與高次次序矩陣的特殊關係，可得到相對應轉換矩陣的遞迴公式。空間熵的正則性是判斷包含所有可允許的全局花樣集合複雜性的重要指標，而在此論文中，空間熵可藉由一組轉換矩陣的最大特徵值計算出，一般而言，因為轉換矩陣的大小呈指數增長，使得空間熵不易準確的計算出。因此定義所謂的連接算子，並利用其來估計空間熵的下界，進而來驗證空間熵的正則性。另外，在二維情況中，可定義跡矩陣，利用其估計更好的空間熵上界。在三維情況中，將以三維細胞類神經網路為例，呈現三維花樣生成問題的應用。此博士論文所建立的理論，在研究網格動態系統及類神經網路中全局解的複雜性上有極大的幫助。

Patterns Generation Problems in Two and Three-dimensional Lattice Models

Student: Yin-Heng Lin

Advisor: Dr. Song-Sun Lin

Department of Applied Mathematics
National Chiao Tung University

Abstract

This dissertation investigates two and three-dimensional patterns generation problems. Both in two and three-dimensional cases, an ordering matrix for the set of all local patterns is established to derive a recursive formula for the ordering matrix for a larger finite lattice. For a given admissible set of local patterns, the transition matrix is defined and the recursive formula of high order transition matrix is presented. Then, the spatial entropy is obtained by computing the maximum eigenvalues of a sequence of transition matrices. The connecting operators are used to verify the positivity of the spatial entropy, which is important in determining the complexity of the set of admissible global patterns. Moreover, trace operator can be also introduced to give a good estimate of the upper bound of spatial entropy. In three-dimensional case, applications to three-dimensional Cellular Neural Networks is presented. The results are useful in studying a set of global stationary solutions in various Lattice Dynamical Systems and Cellular Neural Networks.

誌 謝

朋友們總喜歡戲稱我為『交大寶寶』，的確人生有多少個十一年可以待在同一環境生活成長？很幸運地，在這年輕充滿活力的歲月裡，能夠處於這麼棒的環境中，有機會認識諸多學識淵博的師長們、優秀的學長、學姊、同學、學弟、學妹們以及許多貼心的朋友們，因為大家成就了現在的我，如願取得博士學位，在此向協助我的諸多人士獻上最誠摯的感激。

我要感謝林松山老師，十八歲那年，第一次坐在您微分方程的課堂中，獨特的上課方式與見解，使我理解如何用開放的眼光來看待數學這回事；大三因加入 Infomath 的團隊有更多接觸的機會，從身為理學院院長的您身上見識到一位領導者的風範；大四的數學專題課程從您指導的生物數學專題中，更進一步領略到知識的觸角可以有多廣；在大四即將面臨未來路途的抉擇時，您的鼓勵給了我莫大的勇氣，願意給自己更大的挑戰、更多的可能性與選擇，於是展開了碩士班、博士班精彩的學習生涯；七年中，您總是不厭其煩地教導我各種關於研究與生活上惱人的問題，對於偶爾的懶惰與犯錯也給予了最大的包容；除此之外，您與師母戴曉霞老師經常鼓勵並支持我到世界各國參與國際研討會，讓我有機會不斷地面對新的文化挑戰，進而培養豐富的國際觀與寬廣的視野。您全方面的學識是我最好的榜樣，從您身上直接間接學習到很多，不僅僅是學業上的專業更多的是為人處事的態度。無論在學業或生活上，您都是一位非常優秀的導師，我由衷的感謝。

同時也要感謝我親愛的家人們。爺爺、奶咪，週末回家與您們一同吃飯聊天是一個禮拜當中最開心的事，您們豐富的人生歷練，總讓我對生命有正面的思考；爸爸、媽媽，對您們的感激之意更是難以用三言兩語可以形容，非常的謝謝您們辛苦、無私的栽培，從小到大給予我最大的空間，讓我恣意的馳騁自己的夢想。在我不如意困惑時，會像個長不大的孩子拿起電話來向您們傾吐心聲，您們總是耐心的聽我述說安撫我讓我冷靜，就像小 baby 哭鬧後爸爸媽媽愛心微笑的拍打般，在之後我總是能夠安心的再面對生命的挑戰；哥哥、弟弟你們是最忠實的啦啦隊，在我需要幫忙的時候你們總能助我一臂之力；大嫂麗芳，妳是我的最佳遊伴，我們勇敢的義大利的冒險之旅，讓我有勇氣面對之後的每一次的旅行；大伯、大伯母、三叔、淑霞、姑姑、姑丈、娃娃姊姊、寶寶、乖乖、妞妞、甜甜、定怡、定文，您們不斷的讚美與鼓勵是我前進的主動力。還有，我可愛的三歲狗兒子 PinKo，乖巧的你永遠都會用那烏溜溜的無辜黑眼珠跟撒嬌功夫當我甜蜜的開心果。

楊天行（暱稱：牛），我交往十一年的男朋友，進到交大最幸福的事就是認識了你。儘管外頭的風雨再大，你永遠是我的避風港，無條件地支持我任何的行動與夢想。當我高興滔滔不決的向你邀功炫耀自己的優秀時，你會毫不吝嗇的給予全天下最美麗的讚美；難過口不擇言胡亂咒罵一通時，你總是靜靜的在一旁看著我、聽著我、陪伴著我，不給任何的評斷，讓我慢慢地冷靜後自我反省與思考，就像一面鏡子，讓我從中看見自己的美醜對錯。謝謝你。

也要感謝在交大的老師們：吳培元老師感謝您清晰地微積分課程的教導點燃我對於數學的嚮往，您做事仔細認真的態度深深地影響我；莊重老師、石至文老師感謝您們在動態系統、微分方程上的教導；傅恆霖老師、賴明治老師、陳秋媛老師、陳明璋老師…感謝您們經常給予的鼓勵與建議。除此之外，感謝交大應數系辦公室美麗的三位小姐們：盈吟姊、麗君姊、慧珊，妳們就像我在學校的姊妹淘，在做研究唸書之餘，總能在妳們那兒得到歡樂的感覺，謝謝妳們這麼多年來的照顧。

最後還要感謝許多人，包含許多學長、同儕、貼心的學弟妹、室友與朋友們。班榮超學長，你是我在博士班研究路上最麻吉的伙伴，你無邊的創意是我學習的對象，和你合作無間的經驗非常的美好，謝謝你無私的經驗分享以及生活中許多的幫助，從你身上我也學習到如何勇敢如何慢活如何樂觀的看待事物，謝謝你；許正雄學長，最後將近一年的週五隨機方程討論，讓我獲益良多，從你身上可以讓我看見自己還需要付出更多的努力與認真的學習，謝謝你不時的經驗分享、建議與幫助；謝世峰學長、楊智烜學長、楊定揮學長謝謝你們經常的鼓勵；琲琪，博士班前三年的室友，我永遠忘不了那年冬天我們寒窗苦讀準備資格考的日子，兩人輪流在研究室地板上睡覺督促對方的時光很令人懷念；琪玉，我大學最要好的朋友，許久不見拿起電話仍舊能滔滔不決的聊起現況，謝謝妳滿滿的關心；博士班同師門的學弟妹們：志鴻、其儒、宗澤、耀漢、文貴、雅文、佩君、慧萍、怡菁、園芳、倖綺以及同研究室的學妹郁泉、小巴…謝謝妳們這段時間的陪伴，讓我博士班生活多采多姿；大學時期的室友同學們：玫玲、宜佳、欣怡、宏賓、瑟云、詩珊、大久保…謝謝你們完整了我大學時光無憂無慮天真的生活。這十幾年間的家教學生：山山、樂天、佑寧、佑萱、品宣，帶妳們國中高中課程讓我教學相長。山山、樂天的爸爸媽媽黎老師、伯母，謝謝你們所給予完整的信任與不時的關心與照顧，你們就像是我在新竹的家人般的讓我感到溫暖。

我知道不論再怎麼努力的回憶這段時光中所要感激的人，一定還有許許多多的人被遺漏，我只想大聲的說，『我很幸運，遇到了你（妳）們，謝謝你（妳）們。』

林吟衡 2007/6/13 於交大

Contents

1	Introduction	1
2	Two-dimensional Pattern Generation Problems	10
2.1	Connecting Operators	10
2.1.1	Connecting operators and ordering matrices	10
2.1.2	Lower bound of entropy	20
2.1.3	Examples of transition matrices with positive entropy	27
2.2	Trace operators \mathbb{T}_m	32
2.3	More symbols on larger lattice	38
3	Three-dimensional Patterns Generation Problems	42
3.1	Ordering Matrices and Transition Matrices	42
3.1.1	Ordering matrices	43
3.1.2	Transition matrices	52
3.1.3	Computation of $\lambda_{m,n}$ and entropies	57
3.2	Connecting Operator	60
3.2.1	Connecting operator in z -direction	60
3.2.2	Lower bound of entropy	68
3.3	Applications to 3DCNN	71
	References	75



1 Introduction

Lattices are important in scientifically modelling underlying spatial structures. Investigations in this field have covered phase transition [14], [15], [39], [40], [41], [42], [43], [50], [51], [52], [53], chemical reaction [9], [10], [27], biology [11], [12], [24], [25], [26], [36], [37], [38] and image processing and pattern recognition [19], [20], [21], [22], [23], [28], [32], [33]. In the field of lattice dynamical systems (LDS) and cellular neural networks (CNN), the complexity of the set of all global patterns recently attracted substantial interest. In particular, its spatial entropy has received considerable attention [1],[2], [3], [4], [5], [6], [7], [8], [16], [17], [18], [31], [34],[35], [44], [45], [46], [47], [48], [49].

The one dimensional spatial entropy h can be found from an associated transition matrix \mathbb{T} . The spatial entropy h equals to $\log \rho(\mathbb{T})$, where $\rho(\mathbb{T})$ is the maximum eigenvalue of \mathbb{T} .

In two-dimensional situations, higher transition matrices have been discovered in [35] and developed systematically [4] by studying the patterns generation problem.

This study extends our previous work [4]. For simplicity, two symbols on 2×2 lattice $\mathbb{Z}_{2 \times 2}$ are considered. A transition matrix in the horizontal (or vertical) direction

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & a_{24} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} & a_{34} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} & a_{43} & a_{44} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.1)$$

which is linked to a set of admissible local patterns on $\mathbb{Z}_{2 \times 2}$ is considered, where $a_{ij} \in \{0, 1\}$ for $1 \leq i, j \leq 4$. The associated vertical (or horizontal) transition matrix \mathbb{B}_2 is given by

$$\mathbb{B}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} & b_{14} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23} & b_{24} \\ b_{31} & b_{32} & b_{33} & b_{34} \\ b_{41} & b_{42} & b_{43} & b_{44} \end{bmatrix} \quad (1.2)$$

\mathbb{A}_2 and \mathbb{B}_2 are connected to each other as follows.

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{21} & b_{22} \\ b_{13} & b_{14} & b_{23} & b_{24} \\ \hline b_{31} & b_{32} & b_{41} & b_{42} \\ b_{33} & b_{34} & b_{43} & b_{44} \end{array} \right] = \begin{bmatrix} A_{2;1} & A_{2;2} \\ A_{2;3} & A_{2;4} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.3)$$

and

$$\mathbb{B}_2 = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{13} & a_{14} & a_{23} & a_{24} \\ \hline a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{41} & a_{42} \\ a_{33} & a_{34} & a_{43} & a_{44} \end{array} \right] = \begin{bmatrix} B_{2;1} & B_{2;2} \\ B_{2;3} & B_{2;4} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (1.4)$$

Notably if \mathbb{A}_2 represents the horizontal (or vertical) transition matrix then \mathbb{B}_2 represents the vertical (or horizontal) transition matrix. Results that hold for \mathbb{A}_2 are also valid for \mathbb{B}_2 . Therefore, for simplicity, only \mathbb{A}_2 is presented herein.

The recursive formulae for n -th order transition matrices \mathbb{A}_n defined on $\mathbb{Z}_{2 \times n}$ were obtained [4] as follows

$$\mathbb{A}_{n+1} = \begin{bmatrix} b_{11}A_{n;1} & b_{12}A_{n;2} & b_{21}A_{n;1} & b_{22}A_{n;2} \\ b_{13}A_{n;3} & b_{14}A_{n;4} & b_{23}A_{n;3} & b_{24}A_{n;4} \\ b_{31}A_{n;1} & b_{32}A_{n;2} & b_{41}A_{n;1} & b_{42}A_{n;2} \\ b_{33}A_{n;3} & b_{34}A_{n;4} & b_{43}A_{n;3} & b_{44}A_{n;4} \end{bmatrix} \quad (1.5)$$

whenever

$$\mathbb{A}_n = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;1} & A_{n;2} \\ A_{n;3} & A_{n;4} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.6)$$

for $n \geq 2$, or equivalently,

$$A_{n+1;\alpha} = \begin{bmatrix} b_{\alpha 1}A_{n;1} & b_{\alpha 2}A_{n;2} \\ b_{\alpha 3}A_{n;3} & b_{\alpha 4}A_{n;4} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.7)$$

for $\alpha \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$. The number of all admissible patterns defined on $\mathbb{Z}_{m \times n}$ which can be generated from \mathbb{A}_2 is now defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{m,n}(\mathbb{A}_2) &= |\mathbb{A}_n^{m-1}| \\ &= \text{the summation of all entries in } 2^n \times 2^n \text{ matrix } \mathbb{A}_n^{m-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (1.8)$$

The spatial entropy $h(\mathbb{A}_2)$ is defined as

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \lim_{m,n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{mn} \log \Gamma_{m,n}(\mathbb{A}_2) = \lim_{m,n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{mn} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^{m-1}|. \quad (1.9)$$

The existence of the limit (1.9) has been shown in [4], [18], [35]. When $h(\mathbb{A}_2) > 0$, the number of admissible patterns grows exponentially with the lattice size $m \times n$. In this situation, spatial chaos arises. When $h(\mathbb{A}_2) = 0$, pattern formation occurs.

To compute the double limit in (1.9), $n \geq 2$ can be fixed initially and m allowed to tend to infinite [35] and [4]; then the Perron-Frobenius theorem is applied;

$$\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^{m-1}| = \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n), \quad (1.10)$$

which implies

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n), \quad (1.11)$$

where $\rho(M)$ is the maximum eigenvalue of matrix M . \mathbb{A}_n is a $2^n \times 2^n$ matrix, so computing $\rho(\mathbb{A}_n)$ is usually quite difficult when n is larger. Moreover, (1.11) does not produce any error estimation in the estimated sequence $\frac{1}{n} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n)$ and its limit $h(\mathbb{A}_2)$. This causes a serious problem in computing the entropy. However, for a class of \mathbb{A}_2 , the recursive formulae for $\rho(\mathbb{A}_n)$ can be discovered, along with a limiting equation to $\rho^* = \exp(h(\mathbb{A}_2))$, as in [4].

This study takes a different approach to resolve these difficulties. Previously, the double limit (1.9) was initially examined by taking the m -limit firstly as in (1.10). Now, for each fixed $m \geq 2$, the n -limit in (1.9) is studied. Therefore, the limit

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^{m-1}| \quad (1.12)$$

is considered. Write

$$\mathbb{A}_n^m = \begin{bmatrix} A_{m,n;1} & A_{m,n;2} \\ A_{m,n;3} & A_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (1.13)$$

The investigation of (1.12) would be simpler if a recursive formula such as (1.7) could be found for $A_{m,n;\alpha}$. The first task in this study is to solve this problem. For matrix multiplication, the indices of $A_{n;\alpha}$, $\alpha \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ are conveniently expressed as

$$\mathbb{A}_n = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;11} & A_{n;12} \\ A_{n;21} & A_{n;22} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (1.14)$$

Then

$$A_{m,n;\alpha} = \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)}, \quad (1.15)$$

where

$$A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)} = A_{n;j_1j_2} A_{n;j_2j_3} \cdots A_{n;j_mj_{m+1}}, \quad (1.16)$$

$$k = 1 + \sum_{i=2}^m 2^{m-i}(j_i - 1), \quad (1.17)$$

and

$$\alpha = 2(j_1 - 1) + j_{m+1}. \quad (1.18)$$

$A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)}$ in (1.16) is called an elementary pattern of order (m, n) , and is a fundamental element in constructing $A_{m,n;\alpha}$ in (1.15). Notably the elementary patterns are in lexicographic order, according to (1.17). As in [4], the following m -th order ordering matrix.

$$\mathbb{X}_{m,n} = \begin{bmatrix} X_{m,n;1} & X_{m,n;2} \\ X_{m,n;3} & X_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.19)$$

is represented to record systematically these elementary patterns, where

$$X_{m,n;\alpha} = (A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)})_{1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}} \quad (1.20)$$

is a 2^{m-1} column vector.

The first main result of this study is to introduce the connecting operator \mathbb{C}_m , and to use it to derive a recursive formula like (1.7) for $A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)}$. Indeed,

$$\mathbb{C}_m = \begin{bmatrix} C_{m;11} & C_{m;12} & C_{m;13} & C_{m;14} \\ C_{m;21} & C_{m;22} & C_{m;23} & C_{m;24} \\ C_{m;31} & C_{m;32} & C_{m;33} & C_{m;34} \\ C_{m;41} & C_{m;42} & C_{m;43} & C_{m;44} \end{bmatrix} \quad (1.21)$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} S_{m;11} & S_{m;12} & S_{m;21} & S_{m;22} \\ S_{m;13} & S_{m;14} & S_{m;23} & S_{m;24} \\ S_{m;31} & S_{m;32} & S_{m;41} & S_{m;42} \\ S_{m;33} & S_{m;34} & S_{m;43} & S_{m;44} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.22)$$

where

$$C_{m;ij} = \left(\begin{bmatrix} a_{i1} & a_{i2} \\ a_{i3} & a_{i4} \end{bmatrix} \circ \left(\hat{\otimes} \begin{bmatrix} B_{2;1} & B_{2;2} \\ B_{2;3} & B_{2;4} \end{bmatrix}^{m-2} \right)_{2 \times 2} \right)_{2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}} \circ \left(E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} a_{1j} & a_{2j} \\ a_{3j} & a_{4j} \end{bmatrix} \right)_{2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}} \quad (1.23)$$

is a $2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}$ matrix where $E_{k \times k}$ is the $k \times k$ full matrix; \otimes denotes the Kronecker product, \circ denotes the Hadamard product and the product $\hat{\otimes}$ which involves both the Kronecker product and the Hadamard product, as stipulated by Definition 2.1.2.

In Theorem 2.1.4, $C_{m;i,j}$ is shown to be $a_{i_1 i_2} a_{i_2 i_3} \cdots a_{i_m i_{m+1}}$, with $i_1 = i$ and $i_{m+1} = j$. Therefore, all admissible paths of \mathbb{A}_2 from i to j with length m are arranged systematically in matrix $C_{m;i,j}$. Now, the recursive formula is

$$A_{m,n+1;\alpha}^{(k)} = \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 1})_{kl} A_{m,n;1}^{(l)} & \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 2})_{kl} A_{m,n;2}^{(l)} \\ \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 3})_{kl} A_{m,n;3}^{(l)} & \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 4})_{kl} A_{m,n;4}^{(l)} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (1.24)$$

for $m \geq 2$, $n \geq 2$, $1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}$ and $1 \leq \alpha \leq 4$. (1.24) is the generalization of (1.7).

The recursive formula (1.24) immediately yields a lower bound on entropy. Indeed, for any positive integer K and diagonal periodic cycle $\beta_1 \beta_2 \cdots \beta_K \beta_{K+1}$, where $\beta_j \in \{1, 4\}$ and $\beta_{K+1} = \beta_1$,

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq \frac{1}{mK} \log \rho(S_{m;\beta_1 \beta_2} S_{m;\beta_2 \beta_3} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K \beta_{K+1}}). \quad (1.25)$$

Equation (1.25) implies $h(\mathbb{A}_2) > 0$, if a diagonal periodic cycle of $\beta_1 \beta_2 \cdots \beta_K \beta_1$ applies, with a maximum eigenvalue of $S_{m;\beta_1 \beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K \beta_1}$ that greater than one. This method powerfully yields the positivity of spatial entropy, which is hard in examining the complexity of patterns generation problems.

However, the subadditivity of $\Gamma_{m,n}(\mathbb{A}_2)$ is known to imply

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \leq \frac{1}{mn} \log \Gamma_{m,n}(\mathbb{A}_2) \quad (1.26)$$

as in [18]. Consequently, (1.8), (1.10) and (1.26) indicate an upper bound of entropy as

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \leq \frac{1}{n} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n), \quad (1.27)$$

for any $n \geq 2$.

However, the Perron-Frobenius theorem also implies

$$\limsup_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m} \log \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^{m-1}) = \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n), \quad (1.28)$$

where $\text{tr}(M)$ denotes the trace of matrix M [29], [30]. Therefore, (1.28) implies

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \limsup_{m,n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{mn} \log \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^{m-1}). \quad (1.29)$$

In studying the double-limit of (1.29), for each fixed $m \geq 2$, the n -limit in (1.29)

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^{m-1}) \quad (1.30)$$

is first considered. (1.30) can be studied by introducing the following trace operator

$$\mathbb{T}_m = \begin{bmatrix} C_{m;11} & C_{m;22} \\ C_{m;33} & C_{m;44} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (1.31)$$

Then, a recursive formula for $tr(\mathbb{A}_n^m)$ can be verified

$$tr(\mathbb{A}_n^m) = \left| \mathbb{T}_m^{n-2} \begin{pmatrix} tr X_{m,2;1} \\ tr X_{m,2;4} \end{pmatrix} \right|, \quad (1.32)$$

for $n \geq 2$, where $tr(X_{m,n;\alpha}) = (tr A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)})_{1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}}^t$ and $|v| = \sum_{j=1}^l v_j$ for vector $v = (v_1, \dots, v_l)^t$. Consequently, (1.29) and (1.32) yield

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \limsup_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m} \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_m). \quad (1.33)$$

Notably, for a large class of \mathbb{A}_2 , the limit sup in (1.28), (1.29), (1.30) and (1.33) can be replaced by limit. See section 2.2 for details.

Now, (1.33) can be applied to find the upper bounds of entropy. For example, when \mathbb{A}_2 is symmetric,

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \leq \frac{1}{2m} \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_{2m}), \quad (1.34)$$

for any $m \geq 1$. Since

$$\mathbb{T}_n \leq \mathbb{B}_n \quad (1.35)$$

can be shown for any $n \geq 2$. Generally, (1.33) and (1.34) yield better approximation than (1.11) and (1.27).

Moreover, this dissertation develops a general method to investigate three-dimensional pattern generation problems, extending other studies [4] and [5] to the three-dimensional case. It focuses on ordering matrices of patterns and on the connecting operator in the three-dimensional case. The trace operator has been described elsewhere [8]. This work is motivated by 3DCNN, so it is a major tool to study global patterns in 3DCNN.

Three-dimensional pattern generation problems are considered initially. Let \mathcal{S} be a finite set of $p \geq 2$ colors, where \mathbf{Z}^3 denotes the integer lattice of \mathbb{R}^3 . Denote, $U : \mathbf{Z}^3 \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$, a global pattern by $U(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) = u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3}$. The set of all patterns with p colors in a three-dimensional lattice is expressed as $\Sigma_p^3 \equiv \mathcal{S}^{\mathbf{Z}^3} = \{U | U : \mathbf{Z}^3 \rightarrow \mathcal{S}\}$. The set of all local patterns on $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ is denoted by

$$\Sigma_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3} \equiv \{U |_{\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}} | U \in \Sigma_p^3\}$$

where $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3} = \{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) | 1 \leq \alpha_i \leq m_i, 1 \leq i \leq 3\}$ is an $m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3$ finite rectangular lattice. For simplicity, two colors on the $2 \times 2 \times 2$ lattice $\mathbf{Z}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ are considered here. Given a basic set $\mathcal{B} \subset \Sigma_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$, the spatial entropy can be defined as

$$h(\mathcal{B}) = \lim_{m_1, m_2, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \Gamma_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}(\mathcal{B})}{m_1 m_2 m_3}, \quad (1.36)$$

where $\Gamma_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}(\mathcal{B})$ is the number of distinct patterns in $\Sigma_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}(\mathcal{B})$ and $\Sigma_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}(\mathcal{B})$ is the set of all local patterns on $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, which can be generated from \mathcal{B} , as described elsewhere [18]. Six different orderings

$$\begin{array}{l} [x] : [1] \succ [2] \succ [3] \\ [y] : [2] \succ [1] \succ [3] \\ [z] : [3] \succ [1] \succ [2] \\ [\hat{x}] : [1] \succ [3] \succ [2] \\ [\hat{y}] : [2] \succ [3] \succ [1] \\ [\hat{z}] : [3] \succ [2] \succ [1] \end{array}$$

are obtained and the ordering matrix $\mathbb{W}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ can be introduced according to the different ordering $[\omega]$. Without loss of generality, $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ is considered

(1.37)

and the other cases are similar.

One of the main results is the construction of $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ from $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$, where $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ represents the ordering matrix of $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ according to $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering. It can be addressed in the following three steps.

Step I : Apply $[x]$ -ordering to $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times 2}$

2	4	...	2k	...	2m ₂ -2	2m ₂
1	3	...	2k-1	...	2m ₂ -3	2m ₂ -1

\xrightarrow{y}
 y

and introduce ordering matrix $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ as in Theorem 3.1.1. By Theorem 3.1.8, the transition matrix $\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be obtained from

$$\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2} = (\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2})_{2^{2(m_2-1)} \times 2^{2(m_2-1)}} \circ (E_{2^{2(m_2-2)}} \otimes \mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}),$$

\otimes is the tensor product and \circ is the Hadamard product, where E_{2^k} is the $2^k \times 2^k$ matrix with 1 as its entries, as in Eq. (3.29).

Step II : Convert $[x]$ -ordering into $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering on $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times 2}$ using

↑	z	m ₂ +1	m ₂ +2	...	m ₂ +k	...	2m ₂
		1	2	...	k	...	m ₂

and introduce the ordering matrix $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ as in Theorem 3.1.4. The associated transition matrix $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ is given by

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2} = \mathbb{P}_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2}^t \mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2} \mathbb{P}_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2},$$

where $\mathbb{P}_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ is the permutation matrix as in Theorem 3.1.10.

Step III : Define $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering on $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ as

↑	z	(m ₂ -1)m ₂ +1	(m ₂ -1)m ₂ +2	...	m ₃ m ₂ -1	m ₃ m ₂
		:	:	:	:	:
		m ₂ +1	m ₂ +2	...	2m ₂ -1	2m ₂
		1	2	...	m ₂ -1	m ₂

and introduce ordering matrix $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ as in Theorem 3.1.5. The recursive formula for the transition matrix $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ can be obtained by

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3} = \left(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times (m_3-1)} \right)_{2^{m_2(m_3-1)} \times 2^{m_2(m_3-1)}} \circ \left(E_{2^{m_2(m_3-2)}} \otimes \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2} \right)$$

as in Theorem 3.1.11

Theorem 3.1.13 enables the maximum eigenvalue $\lambda_{\hat{x}; 2, m_2, m_3}$ of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ to be computed, to yield the spatial entropy,

$$h(\mathcal{B}) = \lim_{m_2, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \lambda_{\hat{x}; 2, m_2, m_3}}{m_2 m_3}.$$

However, some estimates of lower bound of spatial entropy $h(\mathcal{B})$ can be made using the connecting operator. Then, for fixed $m_1, m_2 \geq 2$, the m_3 -limit in Eq. (1.36) is studied:

$$\lim_{m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_3} \log |\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1}|. \quad (1.38)$$

The recursive formula of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1}$ in m_3 is considered. Accordingly, the next task is to investigate Eq. (1.38). According to Eqs. (3.46) and (3.47),

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1} = [A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}},$$

$$A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha} = \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha}^{(k)}$$

where $A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha}^{(k)}$ is called an elementary pattern of order (m_1, m_2, m_3) and is a fundamental element in constructing $A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha}$. $\mathbb{V}_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3}$ is defined as

$$\mathbb{V}_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3} = [V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha}],$$

$$V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha} = (A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha}^{(k)})^t$$

as in Eqs. (3.48) and (3.49), which specifies systematically these elementary patterns. The connecting operator $\mathbb{C}_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2}$ is introduced as in Definition 3.2.2, and used to derive a recursive formula for $A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, (m_3+1); \alpha_1; \alpha_2}^{(k)}$ and $A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha_2}^{(\ell)}$ as in Theorem 3.2.5

$$V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3+1; \alpha_1; \alpha_2} = S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha_2},$$

where $\mathbb{C}_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2} = \mathbb{S}_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2}^{(r)}$. The recursive formula Eq. (3.60) yields a lower bound on entropy

$$\begin{aligned} & h(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) \\ & \geq \lim_{m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_1 m_2 P} \log \rho(S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_1}) \end{aligned} \quad (1.39)$$

such as in Theorem 3.2.12 and which implies $h(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) > 0$ if a diagonal periodic cycle is applied with a limit in Eq. (1.39) that exceeds 0. This method powerfully yields

the positivity of spatial entropy, which is useful in evaluating the complexity of patterns generation problems.

The method is very effective in elucidating the complexity of the set of mosaic patterns in 3DCNN. A typical 3DCNN is of the form

$$\frac{du_{i,j,k}}{dt} = -u_{i,j,k} + w + \sum_{|\alpha|,|\beta|,|\gamma|\leq 1} a_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma} f(u_{i+\alpha,j+\beta,k+\gamma}) + \sum_{|\alpha|,|\beta|,|\gamma|\leq 1} b_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma} u_{i+\alpha,j+\beta,k+\gamma}, \quad (1.40)$$

where $(i, j, k) \in \mathbf{Z}^3$, $f(u)$ is a piecewise-linear output function, defined by

$$v = f(u) = \frac{1}{2}(|u + 1| - |u - 1|).$$

Here, $A = (a_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma})$ is a feedback template, a spatial-invariant template; $B = (b_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma})$ is a controlling template, and w is called a biased term or threshold. To elucidate the method, consider nonzero $a_{0,0,0} = a$, $a_{1,0,0} = a_x$, $a_{0,1,0} = a_y$, $a_{0,0,1} = a_z$ and zero other $a_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma}$ and $b_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma}$. Therefore, Eq. (1.40) can be rewritten as

$$\frac{du_{i,j,k}}{dt} = -u_{i,j,k} + w + af(u_{i,j,k}) + a_x f(u_{i+1,j,k}) + a_y f(u_{i,j+1,k}) + a_z f(u_{i,j,k+1}). \quad (1.41)$$

The quantities $u_{i,j,k}$ represent the state of cell at (i, j, k) . The stationary solution $\bar{u} = (\bar{u}_{i,j,k})$ of Eq. (1.41) satisfies

$$u_{i,j,k} = w + av_{i,j,k} + a_x v_{i+1,j,k} + a_y v_{i,j+1,k} + a_z v_{i,j,k+1}, \quad (1.42)$$

where $v = f(u)$, which is very important in studying 3DCNNs: their outputs $\bar{v} = (\bar{v}_{i,j,k}) = f(\bar{u}_{i,j,k})$ are called patterns. A mosaic solution \bar{u} satisfies $|\bar{u}_{i,j,k}| \geq 1$ and its corresponding pattern \bar{v} is called a mosaic pattern here $|\bar{v}_{i,j,k}| \geq 1$ for all $(i, j, k) \in \mathbf{Z}^3$. Among the stationary solutions, the mosaic solutions are stable and are crucial to study the complexity of Eq. (1.41). Equation (1.42) has five parameters w , a , a_x , a_y and a_z . $a_x < a_y < a_z < 0$ and $|a_x| > |a_y| + |a_z|$ are considered to elucidate application of our work. In particular, region [4,8] in Fig. 4 in Sec. 3.3 is considered: the transition matrix can be written as

$$\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2} = G \otimes E \otimes E \otimes E,$$

where $G = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $E = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Then, Steps (I), (II) and (III) yield the aforementioned admissible patterns in $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$; the corresponding transition matrix can be derived as in Proposition 3.1.15.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Step (I)} &\implies \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} = \otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-1} \otimes (\otimes E^2), \\ \text{Step (II)} &\implies \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2} = (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2+1}), \\ \text{Step (III)} &\implies \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3} = \otimes((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3-1} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2}). \end{aligned}$$

The complexity of the 3DCNN model, as in Eq. (1.41), can be examined using the connecting operator defined in Sec. 3.2. Since the connecting operator

$$C_{z;m_1;m_2;11} = S_{z;m_1;m_2;11} = (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E,$$

the maximum eigenvalue can be exactly computed as

$$\rho(S_{z;m_1;m_2;11}) = 2g^{m_2-1}$$

, where $g = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$ is the golden-mean, as in Proposition 3.3.1. According to Eq. (1.39), the lower bound of spatial entropy in the region (VIII)-(i)-(1)-[4,8] can be estimated

$$h(\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}) \geq \lim_{m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2m_2} \log \rho(S_{z;m_1;m_2;11}) = \frac{1}{2} \log g.$$

Moreover, in this case, spatial entropy can be solved exactly from the maximum eigenvalue of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$. Since

$$\rho(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}) = 2^{m_2+m_3-1} g^{(m_2-1)(m_3-1)},$$

the spatial entropy is

$$h(\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}) = \lim_{m_2, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\rho(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3})}{m_2 m_3} = \log g$$

as in Proposition 3.1.15.

In summary, in two-dimensional case, this study yields lower-bound estimates of entropy like (1.25) by introducing connecting operators \mathbb{C}_m , and upper-bound estimates of entropy like (1.34) by introducing trace operators \mathbb{T}_m . And in three-dimensional case, an ordering matrix for the set of all local patterns is established to derive a recursive formula for the ordering matrix for a larger finite lattice. For a given admissible set of local patterns, the transition matrix is defined and the recursive formula of high order transition matrix is presented. Then, the spatial entropy is obtained by computing the maximum eigenvalues of a sequence of transition matrices. This approach accurately and effectively yields the spatial entropy.

The rest of this dissertation is organized as follows. Section 2 derives the connecting operator \mathbb{C}_m which can recursively reduce higher order elementary patterns to patterns of lower order in two-dimensional lattice models. Then, the lower-bound of spatial entropy can be found by computing the maximum eigenvalues of the diagonal periodic cycles of sequence $S_{m;\alpha\beta}$. Moreover, the trace operator \mathbb{T}_m of \mathbb{C}_m is addressed. The entropy can be calculated by computing the maximum eigenvalues of \mathbb{T}_m . When \mathbb{A}_2 is symmetric, the upper-bounds of entropy are also found. Finally, briefly discusses the theory for many symbols on larger lattices. In Section 3, in three-dimensional lattice models, a recursive formula for the ordering matrix $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be derived from $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$. The ordering $[x]$ is converted to $[\hat{x}]$. Then, a similar recursive formula is constructed for ordering matrix $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ from $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$. Then, the recursive formula for the associated high order transition matrices $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ can be obtained from $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}$. Moreover, the connecting operator $\mathbb{C}_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2}$ can be defined, which can recursively reduce elementary patterns of high order to patterns of low order. Then, the lower-bound of spatial entropy is determined by computing the maximum eigenvalues of the diagonal periodic cycles of sequence $S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha\beta}$. Finally, an example of the application of our main results to 3DCNN is presented.

2 Two-dimensional Pattern Generation Problems

2.1 Connecting Operators

2.1.1 Connecting operators and ordering matrices

This section derives connecting operators and investigates their properties. For clarity, two symbols on 2×2 lattice $\mathbb{Z}_{2 \times 2}$ are examined first. Section 2.3 addresses more general situations.

Let \mathbb{A}_2 and \mathbb{B}_2 be defined as in (1.1)~(1.4). The column matrices $\widetilde{\mathbb{A}}_2$ and $\widetilde{\mathbb{B}}_2$ of \mathbb{A}_2 and \mathbb{B}_2 are defined by

$$\widetilde{\mathbb{A}}_2 = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} a_{11} & a_{21} & a_{12} & a_{22} \\ a_{31} & a_{41} & a_{32} & a_{42} \\ \hline a_{13} & a_{23} & a_{14} & a_{24} \\ a_{33} & a_{43} & a_{34} & a_{44} \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c} \tilde{A}_{2;1} \\ \tilde{A}_{2;2} \\ \tilde{A}_{2;3} \\ \tilde{A}_{2;4} \end{array} \right] \quad (2.1)$$

and

$$\widetilde{\mathbb{B}}_2 = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} b_{11} & b_{21} & b_{12} & b_{22} \\ b_{31} & b_{41} & b_{32} & b_{42} \\ \hline b_{13} & b_{23} & b_{14} & b_{24} \\ b_{33} & b_{43} & b_{34} & b_{44} \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c} \tilde{B}_{2;1} \\ \tilde{B}_{2;2} \\ \tilde{B}_{2;3} \\ \tilde{B}_{2;4} \end{array} \right] \quad (2.2)$$

, respectively.

For matrices of higher order $n \geq 2$, \mathbb{A}_n , \mathbb{A}_{n+1} and $A_{n+1;\alpha}$ are defined as in (1.5)~(1.7).

For matrix multiplication, the indices of $A_{n;\alpha}$ are conveniently expressed as

$$A_n = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;11} & A_{n;12} \\ A_{n;21} & A_{n;22} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.3)$$

Clearly, $A_{n;\alpha} = A_{n;j_1 j_2}$, where

$$\alpha = \alpha(j_1, j_2) = 2(j_1 - 1) + j_2. \quad (2.4)$$

For $m \geq 2$, the elementary pattern in the entries of \mathbb{A}_n^m is represented by

$$A_{n;j_1 j_2} A_{n;j_2 j_3} \cdots A_{n;j_m j_{m+1}},$$

where $j_s \in \{1, 2\}$. A lexicographic order for multiple indices

$$J_{m+1} = (j_1 j_2 \cdots j_m j_{m+1})$$

is introduced, using

$$\chi(J_{m+1}) = 1 + \sum_{s=2}^m 2^{m-s} (j_s - 1). \quad (2.5)$$

Now,

$$A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)} = A_{n;j_1 j_2} A_{n;j_2 j_3} \cdots A_{n;j_m j_{m+1}}, \quad (2.6)$$

where

$$\alpha = \alpha(j_1, j_{m+1}) = 2(j_1 - 1) + j_{m+1} \quad (2.7)$$

and

$$k = \chi(J_{m+1}) \quad (2.8)$$

is given in (2.5). Notably, (2.5) and (2.8) do not involve j_{m+1} but (2.7) does.

Therefore, \mathbb{A}_n^m can be expressed as

$$\mathbb{A}_n^m = \begin{bmatrix} A_{m,n;1} & A_{m,n;2} \\ A_{m,n;3} & A_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.9)$$

where

$$A_{m,n;\alpha} = \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)}. \quad (2.10)$$

Furthermore,

$$X_{m,n;\alpha} = (A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)})_{1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}}. \quad (2.11)$$

$1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}$, $X_{m,n;\alpha}$ is a 2^{m-1} column-vector that consists of all elementary patterns in $A_{m,n;\alpha}$. The ordering matrix $\mathbb{X}_{m,n}$ of \mathbb{A}_n^m is now defined by

$$\mathbb{X}_{m,n} = \begin{bmatrix} X_{m,n;1} & X_{m,n;2} \\ X_{m,n;3} & X_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.12)$$

The ordering matrix $\mathbb{X}_{m,n}$ allows the elementary patterns to be tracked during the reduction from \mathbb{A}_{n+1}^m to \mathbb{A}_n^m . This careful book-keeping provides a systematic way to generate the admissible patterns and later, lower-bound estimates of spatial entropy.

The following simplest example is studied first to illustrate the above concept.

Example 2.1.1. For $m = 2$, the following can easily be verified;

$$\mathbb{A}_n^2 = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;11}^2 + A_{n;12}A_{n;21} & A_{n;11}A_{n;12} + A_{n;12}A_{n;22} \\ A_{n;21}A_{n;11} + A_{n;22}A_{n;21} & A_{n;21}A_{n;12} + A_{n;22}^2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.13)$$

and

$$\left. \begin{aligned} A_{2,n;1}^{(1)} &= A_{n;11}^2, & A_{2,n;1}^{(2)} &= A_{n;12}A_{n;21}, \\ A_{2,n;2}^{(1)} &= A_{n;11}A_{n;12}, & A_{2,n;2}^{(2)} &= A_{n;12}A_{n;22}, \\ A_{2,n;3}^{(1)} &= A_{n;21}A_{n;11}, & A_{2,n;3}^{(2)} &= A_{n;22}A_{n;21}, \\ A_{2,n;4}^{(1)} &= A_{n;21}A_{n;12}, & A_{2,n;4}^{(2)} &= A_{n;22}^2. \end{aligned} \right\}. \quad (2.14)$$

Therefore,

$$\left. \begin{aligned} X_{2,n;1} &= \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;11}^2 \\ A_{n;12}A_{n;21} \end{bmatrix}, & X_{2,n;2} &= \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;11}A_{n;12} \\ A_{n;12}A_{n;22} \end{bmatrix}, \\ X_{2,n;3} &= \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;21}A_{n;11} \\ A_{n;22}A_{n;21} \end{bmatrix}, & X_{2,n;4} &= \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;21}A_{n;12} \\ A_{n;22}^2 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned} \right\}. \quad (2.15)$$

Applying (1.7), and by a straightforward computation,

$$X_{2,n+1;1} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n+1;11}^2 \\ A_{n+1;12}A_{n+1;21} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.16)$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} b_{11}^2 A_{n;1}^2 + b_{12}b_{13}A_{n;2}A_{n;3} & b_{11}b_{12}A_{n;1}A_{n;2} + b_{12}b_{14}A_{n;2}A_{n;4} \\ b_{13}b_{11}A_{n;3}A_{n;1} + b_{14}b_{13}A_{n;4}A_{n;3} & b_{13}b_{12}A_{n;3}A_{n;2} + b_{14}^2 A_{n;4}^2 \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} b_{21}b_{31}A_{n;1}^2 + b_{22}b_{33}A_{n;2}A_{n;3} & b_{21}b_{32}A_{n;1}A_{n;2} + b_{22}b_{34}A_{n;2}A_{n;4} \\ b_{23}b_{31}A_{n;3}A_{n;1} + b_{24}b_{33}A_{n;4}A_{n;3} & b_{23}b_{32}A_{n;3}A_{n;2} + b_{24}b_{34}A_{n;4}^2 \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}$$

Clearly, the $j_1 j_2$ entries of $A_{n+1;11}^2$ and $A_{n+1;12} A_{n+1;21}$ in (2.16) consist of entries of $X_{2,n;\alpha}$ in (2.14) with $\alpha = \alpha(j_1, j_2)$ in (2.4). Moreover, the terms in (2.16) can be rearranged in terms of $X_{2,n;\alpha}$ by exchanging the second row in the first matrix with the first row in the second matrix in (2.16) as follows.

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} \left[\begin{array}{cc} b_{11}^2 & b_{12}b_{13} \\ b_{21}b_{31} & b_{22}b_{33} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} A_{n;1}^2 \\ A_{n;2}A_{n;3} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{cc} b_{11}b_{12} & b_{12}b_{14} \\ b_{21}b_{32} & b_{22}b_{34} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} A_{n;1}A_{n;2} \\ A_{n;2}A_{n;4} \end{array} \right] \\ \left[\begin{array}{cc} b_{13}b_{11} & b_{14}b_{13} \\ b_{23}b_{31} & b_{24}b_{33} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} A_{n;3}A_{n;1} \\ A_{n;4}A_{n;3} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{cc} b_{13}b_{12} & b_{14}^2 \\ b_{23}b_{32} & b_{24}b_{34} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} A_{n;3}A_{n;2} \\ A_{n;4}^2 \end{array} \right] \end{array} \right] \quad (2.17)$$

Applying (1.1), (1.2) and (2.1), (2.17) can be rewritten as

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} \left[\begin{array}{cc} a_{11}^2 & a_{12}a_{21} \\ a_{13}a_{31} & a_{14}a_{41} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} A_{n;11}^2 \\ A_{n;12}A_{n;21} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{cc} a_{11}a_{12} & a_{12}a_{22} \\ a_{13}a_{32} & a_{14}a_{42} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} A_{n;11}A_{n;12} \\ A_{n;12}A_{n;22} \end{array} \right] \\ \left[\begin{array}{cc} a_{21}a_{11} & a_{22}a_{21} \\ a_{23}a_{31} & a_{24}a_{41} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} A_{n;21}A_{n;11} \\ A_{n;22}A_{n;21} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{cc} a_{21}a_{12} & a_{22}^2 \\ a_{23}a_{32} & a_{24}a_{42} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} A_{n;21}A_{n;12} \\ A_{n;22}^2 \end{array} \right] \end{array} \right] \\ = \left[\begin{array}{cc} (B_{2;11} \circ \tilde{A}_{2;11})X_{2,n;1} & (B_{2;11} \circ \tilde{A}_{2;12})X_{2,n;2} \\ (B_{2;12} \circ \tilde{A}_{2;11})X_{2,n;3} & (B_{2;12} \circ \tilde{A}_{2;12})X_{2,n;4} \end{array} \right]. \quad (2.18)$$

Therefore, after the entries of $X_{2,n+1;1}$ as in (2.17) or (2.18) have been permuted, $X_{2,n+1;1}$ can be represented by a 2×2 matrix

$$\hat{X}_{2,n+1;1} \equiv \mathcal{P}(X_{2,n+1;1}) \equiv \begin{bmatrix} X_{2,n+1;1;1} & X_{2,n+1;1;2} \\ X_{2,n+1;1;3} & X_{2,n+1;1;4} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.19)$$

where

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} X_{2,n+1;1;1} = S_{2;11}X_{2,n;1}, \\ X_{2,n+1;1;2} = S_{2;12}X_{2,n;2}, \\ X_{2,n+1;1;3} = S_{2;13}X_{2,n;3}, \\ X_{2,n+1;1;4} = S_{2;14}X_{2,n;4} \end{array} \right\} \quad (2.20)$$

and

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} S_{2;11} = B_{2;11} \circ \tilde{A}_{2;11} \equiv C_{2;11}, \\ S_{2;12} = B_{2;11} \circ \tilde{A}_{2;12} \equiv C_{2;12}, \\ S_{2;13} = B_{2;12} \circ \tilde{A}_{2;11} \equiv C_{2;21}, \\ S_{2;14} = B_{2;12} \circ \tilde{A}_{2;12} \equiv C_{2;22}, \end{array} \right\} \quad (2.21)$$

The above derivation indicates that $X_{2,n+1;\alpha}$ can be reduced to $X_{2,n;\beta}$ via multiplication with connecting matrices $C_{2;\alpha\beta}$. This procedure can be extended to introduce the connecting operator $\mathbb{C}_m = [C_{m;\alpha\beta}]$, for all $m \geq 2$.

Before \mathbb{C}_m is introduced, three products of matrices are defined as follows.

Definition 2.1.2. For any two matrices $\mathbb{M} = (M_{ij})$ and $\mathbb{N} = (N_{kl})$, the Kronecker product (tensor product) $\mathbb{M} \otimes \mathbb{N}$ of \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{N} is defined by

$$\mathbb{M} \otimes \mathbb{N} = (M_{ij}\mathbb{N}). \quad (2.22)$$

For any $n \geq 1$,

$$\otimes \mathbb{N}^n = \mathbb{N} \otimes \mathbb{N} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{N},$$

n -times in \mathbb{N} .

Next, for any two $m \times m$ matrices

$$\mathbb{P} = (P_{ij}) \text{ and } \mathbb{Q} = (Q_{ij})$$

where P_{ij} and Q_{ij} are numbers or matrices, the Hadamard product $\mathbb{P} \circ \mathbb{Q}$ is defined by

$$\mathbb{P} \circ \mathbb{Q} = (P_{ij} \cdot Q_{ij}), \quad (2.23)$$

where the product $P_{ij} \cdot Q_{ij}$ of P_{ij} and Q_{ij} may be a multiplication between numbers, between numbers and matrices or between matrices whenever it is well-defined.

Finally, product $\hat{\otimes}$ is defined as follows. For any 4×4 matrix

$$\mathbb{M}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & m_{21} & m_{22} \\ m_{13} & m_{14} & m_{23} & m_{24} \\ m_{31} & m_{32} & m_{41} & m_{42} \\ m_{33} & m_{34} & m_{43} & m_{44} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M_{2;1} & M_{2;2} \\ M_{2;3} & M_{2;4} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.24)$$

and any 2×2 matrix

$$\mathbb{N} = \begin{bmatrix} N_1 & N_2 \\ N_3 & N_4 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.25)$$

where m_{ij} are numbers and N_k are numbers or matrices, for $1 \leq i, j, k \leq 4$, define

$$\mathbb{M}_2 \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{N} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11}N_1 & m_{12}N_2 & m_{21}N_1 & m_{22}N_2 \\ m_{13}N_3 & m_{14}N_4 & m_{23}N_3 & m_{24}N_4 \\ m_{31}N_1 & m_{32}N_2 & m_{41}N_1 & m_{42}N_2 \\ m_{33}N_3 & m_{34}N_4 & m_{43}N_3 & m_{44}N_4 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.26)$$

Furthermore, for $n \geq 1$, the $n + 1$ th order of transition matrix of \mathbb{M}_2 is defined by

$$\mathbb{M}_{n+1} \equiv \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^n = \mathbb{M}_2 \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2 \hat{\otimes} \cdots \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2,$$

n -times in \mathbb{M}_2 . More precisely,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{M}_{n+1} &= \mathbb{M}_2 \hat{\otimes} (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) = \begin{bmatrix} M_{2;1} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) & M_{2;2} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) \\ M_{2;3} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) & M_{2;4} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} m_{11}M_{n;1} & m_{12}M_{n;2} & m_{21}M_{n;1} & m_{22}M_{n;2} \\ m_{13}M_{n;3} & m_{14}M_{n;4} & m_{23}M_{n;3} & m_{24}M_{n;4} \\ m_{31}M_{n;1} & m_{32}M_{n;2} & m_{41}M_{n;1} & m_{42}M_{n;2} \\ m_{33}M_{n;3} & m_{34}M_{n;4} & m_{43}M_{n;3} & m_{44}M_{n;4} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M_{n+1;1} & M_{n+1;2} \\ M_{n+1;3} & M_{n+1;4} \end{bmatrix}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.27)$$

where

$$\mathbb{M}_n = \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1} = \begin{bmatrix} M_{n;1} & M_{n;2} \\ M_{n;3} & M_{n;4} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Here, the following convention is adopted,

$$\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^0 = \mathbb{E}_{2 \times 2}.$$

Definition 2.1.3. For $m \geq 2$, define

$$\mathbb{C}_m = \begin{bmatrix} C_{m;11} & C_{m;12} & C_{m;13} & C_{m;14} \\ C_{m;21} & C_{m;22} & C_{m;23} & C_{m;24} \\ C_{m;31} & C_{m;32} & C_{m;33} & C_{m;34} \\ C_{m;41} & C_{m;42} & C_{m;43} & C_{m;44} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{m;11} & S_{m;12} & S_{m;21} & S_{m;22} \\ S_{m;13} & S_{m;14} & S_{m;23} & S_{m;24} \\ S_{m;31} & S_{m;32} & S_{m;41} & S_{m;42} \\ S_{m;33} & S_{m;34} & S_{m;43} & S_{m;44} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.28)$$

where

$$C_{m;\alpha\beta} = \left(\begin{bmatrix} a_{\alpha 1} & a_{\alpha 2} \\ a_{\alpha 3} & a_{\alpha 4} \end{bmatrix} \circ \left(\hat{\otimes} \begin{bmatrix} B_{2;1} & B_{2;2} \\ B_{2;3} & B_{2;4} \end{bmatrix}^{m-2} \right)_{2 \times 2} \right)_{2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}} \circ \left(E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \left(\begin{bmatrix} a_{1\beta} & a_{2\beta} \\ a_{3\beta} & a_{4\beta} \end{bmatrix} \right) \right)_{2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}}. \quad (2.29)$$

Similarly, for \mathbb{B}_2 , define

$$\mathbb{U}_m = \begin{bmatrix} U_{m;11} & U_{m;12} & U_{m;13} & U_{m;14} \\ U_{m;21} & U_{m;22} & U_{m;23} & U_{m;24} \\ U_{m;31} & U_{m;32} & U_{m;33} & U_{m;34} \\ U_{m;41} & U_{m;42} & U_{m;43} & U_{m;44} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} W_{m;11} & W_{m;12} & W_{m;21} & W_{m;22} \\ W_{m;13} & W_{m;14} & W_{m;23} & W_{m;24} \\ W_{m;31} & W_{m;32} & W_{m;41} & W_{m;42} \\ W_{m;33} & W_{m;34} & W_{m;43} & W_{m;44} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.30)$$

where

$$U_{m;\alpha\beta} = \left(\begin{bmatrix} b_{\alpha 1} & b_{\alpha 2} \\ b_{\alpha 3} & b_{\alpha 4} \end{bmatrix} \circ \left(\hat{\otimes} \begin{bmatrix} A_{2;1} & A_{2;2} \\ A_{2;3} & A_{2;4} \end{bmatrix}^{m-2} \right)_{2 \times 2} \right)_{2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}} \circ \left(E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \left(\begin{bmatrix} b_{1\beta} & b_{2\beta} \\ b_{3\beta} & b_{4\beta} \end{bmatrix} \right) \right)_{2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}}. \quad (2.31)$$

$\mathbb{S}_m = [S_{m;\alpha\beta}]$ and $\mathbb{W}_m = [W_{m;\alpha\beta}]$.

Now \mathbb{C}_{m+1} can be found from \mathbb{C}_m by a recursive formula, as in (1.7).

Theorem 2.1.4. For any $m \geq 2$ and $1 \leq \alpha, \beta \leq 4$,

$$C_{m+1;\alpha\beta} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{\alpha 1} C_{m;1\beta} & a_{\alpha 2} C_{m;2\beta} \\ a_{\alpha 3} C_{m;3\beta} & a_{\alpha 4} C_{m;4\beta} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.32)$$

and

$$U_{m+1;\alpha\beta} = \begin{bmatrix} b_{\alpha 1} U_{m;1\beta} & b_{\alpha 2} U_{m;2\beta} \\ b_{\alpha 3} U_{m;3\beta} & b_{\alpha 4} U_{m;4\beta} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.33)$$

Proof. By (2.27),

$$\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-1} = \mathbb{B}_2 \hat{\otimes} (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) = \begin{bmatrix} B_{2;1} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) & B_{2;2} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) \\ B_{2;3} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) & B_{2;4} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) \end{bmatrix}.$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} C_{m+1;\alpha\beta} &= (B_{2;\alpha} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-1})) \circ (E_{2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}} \otimes \tilde{A}_{2;\beta}) \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} a_{\alpha 1} (B_{2;1} \circ \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) & a_{\alpha 2} (B_{2;2} \circ \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) \\ a_{\alpha 3} (B_{2;3} \circ \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) & a_{\alpha 4} (B_{2;4} \circ \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) \end{bmatrix} \circ (E_{2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}} \otimes \tilde{A}_{2;\beta}) \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} a_{\alpha 1} [(B_{2;1} \circ \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) \circ (E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \tilde{A}_{2;\beta})] & a_{\alpha 2} [(B_{2;2} \circ \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) \circ (E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \tilde{A}_{2;\beta})] \\ a_{\alpha 3} [(B_{2;3} \circ \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) \circ (E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \tilde{A}_{2;\beta})] & a_{\alpha 4} [(B_{2;4} \circ \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2}) \circ (E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \tilde{A}_{2;\beta})] \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} a_{\alpha 1} C_{m;1\beta} & a_{\alpha 2} C_{m;2\beta} \\ a_{\alpha 3} C_{m;3\beta} & a_{\alpha 4} C_{m;4\beta} \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

A similar result also holds for $U_{m;\alpha\beta}$; the details are omitted here. The proof is complete. \square

Notably, (2.32) implies $\mathbb{C}_{m;ij}$ is $a_{i_1 i_2} a_{i_2 i_3} \cdots a_{i_m i_{m+1}}$ with $i_1 = i$ and $i_{m+1} = j$. $\mathbb{C}_{m;ij}$ consist of all words(or paths) of length m starting from i and ending at j . Indeed, the entries of \mathbb{C}_m and \mathbb{B}_{m+1} are the same. However, the arrangements are different. \mathbb{C}_m can also be used to study the primitivity of \mathbb{A}_n , $n \geq 2$, as in [6].

That the recursive formula (1.24) holds remains to be shown. Indeed, in (2.6) substituting n for $n + 1$ and using (1.7),

$$\begin{aligned} & A_{m,n+1;\alpha}^{(k)} \\ &= A_{n+1;j_1 j_2} A_{n+1;j_2 j_3} \cdots A_{n+1;j_m j_{m+1}} \\ &= \prod_{i=1}^m \begin{bmatrix} b_{\alpha_i 1} A_{n;11} & b_{\alpha_i 2} A_{n;12} \\ b_{\alpha_i 3} A_{n;21} & b_{\alpha_i 4} A_{n;22} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.34)$$

where $\alpha_i = \alpha(j_i, j_{i+1})$, for $1 \leq i \leq m$. After m matrix multiplications are executed in (2.34),

$$A_{m,n+1;\alpha}^{(k)} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{m,n+1;\alpha;1}^{(k)} & A_{m,n+1;\alpha;2}^{(k)} \\ A_{m,n+1;\alpha;3}^{(k)} & A_{m,n+1;\alpha;4}^{(k)} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.35)$$

where

$$A_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta}^{(k)} = \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} K(m; \alpha, \beta; k, l) A_{m,n;\beta}^{(l)} \quad (2.36)$$

is a linear combination of $A_{m,n;\beta}^{(l)}$ with the coefficients $K(m; \alpha, \beta; k, l)$ which are products of $b_{\alpha_i j}$, $1 \leq l \leq m$. $K(m; \alpha, \beta; k, l)$ must be studied in more details.

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{A}_{n+1}^m &= \begin{bmatrix} A_{m,n+1;1} & A_{m,n+1;2} \\ A_{m,n+1;3} & A_{m,n+1;4} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;1}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;2}^{(k)} \\ \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;3}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;4}^{(k)} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;1;1}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;1;2}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;2;1}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;2;2}^{(k)} \\ \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;1;3}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;1;4}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;2;3}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;2;4}^{(k)} \\ \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;3;1}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;3;2}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;4;1}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;4;2}^{(k)} \\ \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;3;3}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;3;4}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;4;3}^{(k)} & \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n+1;4;4}^{(k)} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.37)$$

Now, $X_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta}$ is defined as

$$X_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta} = (A_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta}^{(k)})^t. \quad (2.38)$$

As in (2.17), the entries of $X_{m,n+1;\alpha}$ are rearranged into a new matrix

$$\hat{X}_{m,n+1;\alpha} \equiv \mathcal{P}(X_{m,n+1;\alpha}) \equiv \begin{bmatrix} X_{m,n+1;\alpha;1} & X_{m,n+1;\alpha;2} \\ X_{m,n+1;\alpha;3} & X_{m,n+1;\alpha;4} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.39)$$

From (2.36) and (2.38),

$$X_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta} = \mathbb{K}(m; \alpha, \beta) X_{m,n;\beta} \quad (2.40)$$

where

$$\mathbb{K}(m; \alpha, \beta) = (K(m; \alpha, \beta; k, l)), \quad 1 \leq k, l \leq 2^{m-1},$$

is a $2^{m-1} \times 2^{m-1}$ matrix. Now, $\mathbb{K}(m; \alpha, \beta) = S_{m;\alpha\beta}$ must be shown as follows.

Theorem 2.1.5. *For any $m \geq 2$ and $n \geq 2$, let $S_{m;\alpha\beta}$ be given as in (2.28) and (2.29). Then,*

$$\mathbb{K}(m; \alpha, \beta) = S_{m;\alpha\beta},$$

i.e.,

$$X_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta} = S_{m;\alpha\beta} X_{m,n;\beta}, \quad (2.41)$$

or equivalently, the recursive formula (1.24) holds. That is,

$$A_{m,n+1;\alpha}^{(k)} = \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 1})_{kl} A_{m,n;1}^{(l)} & \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 2})_{kl} A_{m,n;2}^{(l)} \\ \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 3})_{kl} A_{m,n;3}^{(l)} & \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 4})_{kl} A_{m,n;4}^{(l)} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.42)$$

Moreover, for $n = 1$,

$$A_{m,2;\alpha}^{(k)} = \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 1})_{kl} & \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 2})_{kl} \\ \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 3})_{kl} & \sum_{l=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha 4})_{kl} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.43)$$

for any $1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}$ and $\alpha \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$.

Proof. The result is proven by the induction on m .

When $m = 2$, and $\alpha = 1$, (2.41) was proven as in Example 2.1.1. The case with $\alpha = 2, 3$ and 4 can also be proved analogously; the details are omitted.

Now, (2.41) is assumed to hold for m ; the goal is to show that it also holds for $m + 1$. Since

$$\mathbb{A}_{n+1}^{m+1} = \mathbb{A}_{n+1} \cdot \mathbb{A}_{n+1}^m = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n+1;1} & A_{n+1;2} \\ A_{n+1;3} & A_{n+1;4} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A_{m,n+1,1} & A_{m,n+1,2} \\ A_{m,n+1,3} & A_{m,n+1,4} \end{bmatrix},$$

(2.11) implies

$$X_{m+1,n+1;1} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n+1;1} X_{m,n+1;1} \\ A_{n+1;2} X_{m,n+1;3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad X_{m+1,n+1;2} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n+1;1} X_{m,n+1;2} \\ A_{n+1;2} X_{m,n+1;4} \end{bmatrix},$$

$$X_{m+1,n+1;3} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n+1;3} X_{m,n+1;1} \\ A_{n+1;4} X_{m,n+1;3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad X_{m+1,n+1;4} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n+1;3} X_{m,n+1;2} \\ A_{n+1;4} X_{m,n+1;4} \end{bmatrix}.$$

For $\alpha = 1$, by induction on m ,

$$\begin{aligned}
& (A_{n+1;1}\mathcal{P}(X_{m,n+1;1}), A_{n+1;2}\mathcal{P}(X_{m,n+1;3}))^t \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} b_{11}A_{n;1} & b_{12}A_{n;2} \\ b_{13}A_{n;3} & b_{14}A_{n;4} \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} S_{m;11}X_{m,n;1} & S_{m;12}X_{m,n;2} \\ S_{m;13}X_{m,n;3} & S_{m;14}X_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} b_{21}A_{n;1} & b_{22}A_{n;2} \\ b_{23}A_{n;3} & b_{24}A_{n;4} \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} S_{m;31}X_{m,n;1} & S_{m;32}X_{m,n;2} \\ S_{m;33}X_{m,n;3} & S_{m;34}X_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} b_{11}S_{m;11}A_{n;1}X_{m,n;1} + b_{12}S_{m;13}A_{n;2}X_{m,n;3} & b_{11}S_{m;12}A_{n;1}X_{m,n;2} + b_{12}S_{m;14}A_{n;2}X_{m,n;4} \\ b_{13}S_{m;11}A_{n;3}X_{m,n;1} + b_{14}S_{m;13}A_{n;4}X_{m,n;3} & b_{13}S_{m;12}A_{n;3}X_{m,n;2} + b_{14}S_{m;14}A_{n;4}X_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} b_{21}S_{m;31}A_{n;1}X_{m,n;1} + b_{22}S_{m;33}A_{n;2}X_{m,n;3} & b_{21}S_{m;32}A_{n;1}X_{m,n;2} + b_{22}S_{m;34}A_{n;2}X_{m,n;4} \\ b_{23}S_{m;31}A_{n;3}X_{m,n;1} + b_{24}S_{m;33}A_{n;4}X_{m,n;3} & b_{23}S_{m;32}A_{n;3}X_{m,n;2} + b_{24}S_{m;34}A_{n;4}X_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Hence $X_{m+1,n+1;1}$ can be represented by a matrix

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{X}_{m+1,n+1;1} &\equiv \mathcal{P}(X_{m+1,n+1;1}) \equiv \begin{bmatrix} X_{m+1,n+1;1,1} & X_{m+1,n+1;1,2} \\ X_{m+1,n+1;1,3} & X_{m+1,n+1;1,4} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} b_{11}S_{m;11} & b_{12}S_{m;13} \\ b_{21}S_{m;31} & b_{22}S_{m;33} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;1}X_{m,n;1} \\ A_{n;2}X_{m,n;3} \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} b_{11}S_{m;12} & b_{12}S_{m;14} \\ b_{21}S_{m;32} & b_{22}S_{m;34} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;1}X_{m,n;2} \\ A_{n;2}X_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} b_{13}S_{m;11} & b_{14}S_{m;13} \\ b_{23}S_{m;31} & b_{24}S_{m;33} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;3}X_{m,n;1} \\ A_{n;4}X_{m,n;3} \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} b_{13}S_{m;12} & b_{14}S_{m;14} \\ b_{23}S_{m;32} & b_{24}S_{m;34} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;3}X_{m,n;2} \\ A_{n;4}X_{m,n;4} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Once again, (1.1), (1.2) and (2.1) can be used to recast the matrix $\hat{X}_{m+1,n+1;1}$ as

$$\begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}C_{m;11} & a_{12}C_{m;21} \\ a_{13}C_{m;31} & a_{14}C_{m;41} \end{bmatrix} X_{m+1,n;1} & \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}C_{m;12} & a_{12}C_{m;22} \\ a_{13}C_{m;32} & a_{14}C_{m;42} \end{bmatrix} X_{m+1,n;2} \\ \begin{bmatrix} a_{21}C_{m;11} & a_{22}C_{m;21} \\ a_{23}C_{m;31} & a_{24}C_{m;41} \end{bmatrix} X_{m+1,n;3} & \begin{bmatrix} a_{21}C_{m;12} & a_{22}C_{m;22} \\ a_{23}C_{m;32} & a_{24}C_{m;42} \end{bmatrix} X_{m+1,n;4} \end{bmatrix}$$

According to Theorem 2.1.4, the above matrix becomes

$$= \begin{bmatrix} C_{m+1;11}X_{m+1,n;1} & C_{m+1;12}X_{m+1,n;2} \\ C_{m+1;21}X_{m+1,n;3} & C_{m+1;22}X_{m+1,n;4} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{m+1;11}X_{m+1,n;1} & S_{m+1;12}X_{m+1,n;2} \\ S_{m+1;13}X_{m+1,n;3} & S_{m+1;14}X_{m+1,n;4} \end{bmatrix}.$$

The cases with $\alpha = 2, 3$ and 4 can also be considered analogously (2.41) follows.

Next, (2.42) follows easily from (2.35), (2.36) and (2.41).

Equation (2.43) remains to be shown. If the 2×2 matrix

$$\mathbb{A}_1 \equiv \begin{bmatrix} A_{1;11} & A_{1;12} \\ A_{1;21} & A_{1;22} \end{bmatrix} \equiv \begin{bmatrix} A_{1;1} & A_{1;2} \\ A_{1;3} & A_{1;4} \end{bmatrix} \equiv \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.44)$$

is introduced, then the previous argument also hold for $n = 1$. Hence, (2.43) holds. The proof is complete. \square

For any positive integer $p \geq 2$, applying Theorem 2.1.5 p times permits the elementary patterns of \mathbb{A}_{n+p}^m to be expressed as the product of a sequence of $S_{m;\beta_i\beta_{i+1}}$ and the elementary patterns in \mathbb{A}_n^m . The elementary pattern in \mathbb{A}_{n+p}^m is first studied.

For any $p \geq 2$ and $1 \leq q \leq p-1$, define

$$A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_q}^{(k)} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_q;1}^{(k)} & A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_q;2}^{(k)} \\ A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_q;3}^{(k)} & A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_q;4}^{(k)} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.45)$$

Then

$$A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p}^{(k)} = \sum_{l_1=1}^{2^{m-1}} \cdots \sum_{l_p=1}^{2^{m-1}} \left(\prod_{i=1}^p K(m; \beta_{i-1}, \beta_i; l_{i-1}, l_i) \right) A_{m,n;\beta_p}^{(l_p)}, \quad (2.46)$$

where $\beta_0 = \alpha$ and $l_0 = k$ can be easily verified. Therefore, for any $p \geq 1$, a generalization for (2.37) can be found for \mathbb{A}_{n+p}^m as a $2^{p+1} \times 2^{p+1}$ matrix

$$\mathbb{A}_{n+p}^m = [A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p}] \quad (2.47)$$

where

$$A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p} = \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p}^{(k)}. \quad (2.48)$$

In particular, if $\alpha; \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_p \in \{1, 4\}$, then $A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p}$ lies on the diagonal of \mathbb{A}_{n+p}^m in (2.47).

Now, define

$$X_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p} = (A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p}^{(k)})^t. \quad (2.49)$$

Therefore, Theorem 2.1.5 can be generalized to

Theorem 2.1.6. For any $m \geq 2$, $n \geq 2$ and $p \geq 1$,

$$X_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p} = S_{m;\alpha\beta_1} S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_{p-1}\beta_p} X_{m,n;\beta_p} \quad (2.50)$$

where $\alpha, \beta_i \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $1 \leq i \leq p$.

Proof. From (2.46), (2.40) and (2.42),

$$\begin{aligned} A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p}^{(k)} &= \sum_{l_1=1}^{2^{m-1}} \cdots \sum_{l_p=1}^{2^{m-1}} \left(\prod_{i=1}^p K(m; \beta_{i-1}, \beta_i; l_{i-1}, l_i) \right) A_{m,n;\beta_p}^{(l_p)} \\ &= \sum_{l_1=1}^{2^{m-1}} \cdots \sum_{l_p=1}^{2^{m-1}} \left(\prod_{i=1}^p (S_{m;\beta_{i-1}\beta_i})_{l_{i-1}l_i} \right) A_{m,n;\beta_p}^{(l_p)} \\ &= \sum_{l_1=1}^{2^{m-1}} \cdots \sum_{l_p=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\beta_0\beta_1})_{l_0l_1} (S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2})_{l_1l_2} \cdots (S_{m;\beta_{p-1}\beta_p})_{l_{p-1}l_p} A_{m,n;\beta_p}^{(l_p)} \\ &= \sum_{l_p=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\beta_0\beta_1} S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_{p-1}\beta_p})_{l_0l_p} A_{m,n;\beta_p}^{(l_p)} \\ &= \sum_{l_p=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha\beta_1} S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_{p-1}\beta_p})_{kl_p} A_{m,n;\beta_p}^{(l_p)} \end{aligned}$$

is derived. By (2.49), then

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p} &= (A_{m,n+p;\alpha;\beta_1;\beta_2;\dots;\beta_p}^{(k)})^t \\
 &= \left(\sum_{l_p=1}^{2^{m-1}} (S_{m;\alpha\beta_1} S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_{p-1}\beta_p})_{kl_p} A_{m,n;\beta_p}^{(l_p)} \right)^t \\
 &= S_{m;\alpha\beta_1} S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_{p-1}\beta_p} X_{m,n;\beta_p}.
 \end{aligned}$$

The proof is complete. □



2.1.2 Lower bound of entropy

In this subsection, the connecting operator \mathbb{C}_m is employed to estimate the lower bound of entropy, and in particular, to verify the positivity of entropy.

First, recall some properties of $\Gamma_{m,n}$ and spatial entropy.

$\Gamma_{m,n}$ satisfies the subadditivity in m and n :

$$\Gamma_{m_1+m_2,n} \leq \Gamma_{m_1,n} \Gamma_{m_2,n}, \quad (2.51)$$

and

$$\Gamma_{m,n_1+n_2} \leq \Gamma_{m,n_1} \Gamma_{m,n_2}, \quad (2.52)$$

or equivalently,

$$|\mathbb{A}_n^{m_1+m_2}| \leq |\mathbb{A}_n^{m_1}| |\mathbb{A}_n^{m_2}| \quad (2.53)$$

and

$$|\mathbb{A}_{n_1+n_2}^m| \leq |\mathbb{A}_{n_1}^m| |\mathbb{A}_{n_2}^m|, \quad (2.54)$$

for positive integers m, n, m_1, n_1, m_2 and n_2 . Here

$$\mathbb{A}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.55)$$

is applied.

The subadditivity property implies

$$\limsup_{m,n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{mn} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^m| \leq \frac{1}{pq} \log |\mathbb{A}_q^{p-1}| \quad (2.56)$$

for any p and $q \geq 2$. Therefore,

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \lim_{m,n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{mn} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^m|$$

exists, and equals

$$\inf_{p,q \geq 2} \frac{1}{pq} \log |\mathbb{A}_q^{p-1}|. \quad (2.57)$$

In particular, $h(\mathbb{A}_2)$ has an upper bound

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \leq \frac{1}{pq} \log |\mathbb{A}_q^{p-1}| \quad (2.58)$$

for any p and $q \geq 2$.

Similarly, when \mathbb{A}_2 is horizontal (or vertical) transition matrix for any $m \geq 1$ and $q \geq 2$,

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^m| \leq \frac{1}{q} \log |\mathbb{A}_q^m|. \quad (2.59)$$

Hence, the spatial entropy is $h_m(\mathbb{A}_2)$ on an infinite lattice $\mathbb{Z}_{m+1 \times \infty}$ (or $\mathbb{Z}_{\infty \times m+1}$) and

$$h_m(\mathbb{A}_2) \equiv \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^m| = \inf_{q \geq 2} \frac{1}{q} \log |\mathbb{A}_q^m|. \quad (2.60)$$

For the proof of the above results, see [18].

Furthermore, by Perron-Frobenius theorem,

$$\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^m| = \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n). \quad (2.61)$$

Therefore, for any $n \geq 2$

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \leq \frac{1}{n} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n). \quad (2.62)$$

For a proof of (2.61), see [4], [35].

The following notation is adopted.

Definition 2.1.7. Let $X = (X_1, \dots, X_M)^t$, where X_k are $N \times N$ matrices. Define the summation of X_k by

$$|X| = \sum_{k=1}^N X_k. \quad (2.63)$$

If $\mathbb{M} = [M_{ij}]$ is a $M \times M$ matrix, then

$$|\mathbb{M}X| = \sum_{i=1}^M \sum_{j=1}^M M_{ij} X_j. \quad (2.64)$$

Note that, (2.63) implies

$$|X_{m,n;\alpha}| = \sum_{k=1}^{2^m-1} A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)} = A_{m,n;\alpha}. \quad (2.65)$$

As usual, the set of all matrices with the same order can be partially ordered.

Definition 2.1.8. Let $\mathbb{M} = [M_{ij}]$ and $\mathbb{N} = [N_{ij}]$ be two $M \times M$ matrices, $\mathbb{M} \geq \mathbb{N}$ if $M_{ij} \geq N_{ij}$ for all $1 \leq i, j \leq M$.

Notably, if $\mathbb{A}_2 \geq \mathbb{A}'_2$ then $\mathbb{A}_n \geq \mathbb{A}'_n$ for all $n \geq 2$. Therefore, $h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq h(\mathbb{A}'_2)$. Hence, the spatial entropy as a function of \mathbb{A}_2 is monotonic with respect to the partial order \geq .

Definition 2.1.9. A $K + 1$ multiple index

$$\mathcal{B}_K \equiv (\beta_1 \beta_2 \cdots \beta_K \beta_{K+1}) \quad (2.66)$$

is called a (periodic) cycle if

$$\beta_{K+1} = \beta_1. \quad (2.67)$$

It is called a diagonal cycle if (2.67) holds and

$$\beta_k \in \{1, 4\} \quad (2.68)$$

for each $1 \leq k \leq K + 1$.

For a diagonal cycle (2.66), denote

$$\bar{\beta}_K = \beta_1; \beta_2; \cdots; \beta_K \quad (2.69)$$

and

$$\bar{\beta}_K^n = \bar{\beta}_K; \bar{\beta}_K; \cdots; \bar{\beta}_K. \quad (n \text{ times}) \quad (2.70)$$

First, prove the following Lemma.

Lemma 2.1.10. *Let $m \geq 2$, $K \geq 1$, \mathcal{B}_K be a diagonal cycle. Then, for any $n \geq 1$,*

$$\rho(\mathbb{A}_{nK+2}^m) \geq \rho(|(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} S_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_{K+1}})^n X_{m,2;\beta_1}|) \quad (2.71)$$

Proof. Since \mathcal{B}_K is a periodic cycle, Theorem 2.1.6 implies

$$X_{m,nK+2;\bar{\beta}_K^n} = (S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} S_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_{K+1}})^n X_{m,2;\beta_1}. \quad (2.72)$$

Furthermore \mathcal{B}_K is diagonal, and $|X_{m,nK+2;\bar{\beta}_K^n}| = A_{m,nK+2;\bar{\beta}_K^n}$ lies on the diagonal part as in (2.47) with $n+p = nK+2$, therefore

$$\rho(\mathbb{A}_{nK+2}^m) \geq \rho(|X_{m,nK+2;\bar{\beta}_K^n}|). \quad (2.73)$$

Therefore, (2.71) follows from (2.72) and (2.73).

The proof is complete. \square

The following lemma is valuable in studying maximum eigenvalue of $(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_{K+1}})^n X_{m,2;\beta_1}$ in (2.71).

Lemma 2.1.11. *For any $m \geq 2$, $1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}$ and $\alpha \in \{1, 4\}$, if*

$$\text{tr}(A_{m,2;\alpha}^{(k)}) = 0, \quad (2.74)$$

then for all $1 \leq l \leq 2^{m-1}$,

$$(S_{m,\alpha 1})_{kl} = 0 \text{ and } (S_{m,\alpha 4})_{kl} = 0, \quad (2.75)$$

i.e., the k -th rows of matrices $S_{m,\alpha 1}$ and $S_{m,\alpha 4}$ are zeros. Furthermore, for any diagonal cycle \mathcal{B}_K , let $U = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{2^{m-1}})$ be an eigenvector of $S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} S_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}$, if $u_k \neq 0$ for some $1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}$, then

$$\text{tr}(A_{m,2;\alpha}^{(k)}) > 0. \quad (2.76)$$

Proof. Since $A_{m,2;\alpha}^{(k)}$ can be expressed as in (2.43). Therefore, $\text{tr}(A_{m,2;\alpha}^{(k)}) = 0$ if and only if (2.75) holds for all $1 \leq l \leq 2^{m-1}$. The second part of the lemma follows easily from the first part.

The proof is complete. \square

By Lemma 2.1.10 and Lemma 2.1.11, the lower bound of entropy can be obtained as follows.

Theorem 2.1.12. *Let $\beta_1\beta_2 \cdots \beta_K\beta_1$ be a diagonal cycle. Then for any $m \geq 2$,*

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq \frac{1}{mK} \log \rho(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} S_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}). \quad (2.77)$$

and

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq \frac{1}{mK} \log \rho(W_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} W_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots W_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}). \quad (2.78)$$

In particular, if a diagonal cycle $\beta_1\beta_2 \cdots \beta_K\beta_1$ exists and $m \geq 2$ such that

$$\rho(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} S_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}) > 1,$$

or

$$\rho(W_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} W_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots W_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}) > 1$$

then $h(\mathbb{A}_2) > 0$.

Proof. First, show that

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq \frac{1}{mK} \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} (\log \rho(|(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} S_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1})^n X_{m,2;\beta_1}|)). \quad (2.79)$$

Indeed, from (1.11) and (2.71),

$$\begin{aligned} h(\mathbb{A}_2) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{nK+2} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_{nK+2}) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m(nK+2)} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_{nK+2}^m) \\ &\geq \frac{1}{mK} \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} (\log \rho(|(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1})^n X_{m,2;\beta_1}|)). \end{aligned}$$

Now, the following remains to be shown

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} (\log \rho(|(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1})^n X_{m,2;\beta_1}|)) = \log \rho(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}). \quad (2.80)$$

Since $X_{m,2;\beta_1} = (A_{m,2;\beta_1}^{(k)})^t$, if $\text{tr}(A_{m,2;\beta_1}^{(k)}) = 0$ then Lemma 2.1.11 implies the k -th row of $S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2}$ is zero which implies that the k -th row of $(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1})^n$ is also zero for any $n \geq 1$.

If $\text{tr}(A_{m,2;\beta_1}^{(k)}) = 0$ for all $1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}$, then $S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \equiv 0$. (2.80) holds trivially.

Now, assume that $1 \leq k' \leq 2^{m-1}$ exists such that $\text{tr}(A_{m,2;\beta_1}^{(k')}) > 0$. Define

$$\hat{X} = (A_{m,2;\beta_1}^{(k')})^t = (\hat{X}_1, \cdots, \hat{X}_M), \quad (2.81)$$

where $\text{tr}(A_{m,2;\beta_1}^{(k')}) > 0$ for $1 \leq k' \leq M \leq 2^{m-1}$. Then $\rho(\hat{X}_j) > 0$ for $1 \leq j \leq M$.

Let \mathbb{M} be the $M \times M$ sub-matrix of $S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}$ from which the k -th row and k -th column have been removed whenever $\text{tr}(A_{m,2;\beta_1}^{(k)}) = 0$ for $1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}$.

Clearly,

$$|(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1})^n X_{m,2;\beta_1}| = |\mathbb{M}^n \hat{X}|, \quad (2.82)$$

and

$$\rho(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}) = \rho(\mathbb{M}). \quad (2.83)$$

The proof of (2.80) comprise three steps, according to

- (i) \mathbb{M} is primitive,
 - (ii) \mathbb{M} is irreducible, and
 - (iii) \mathbb{M} is reducible.
- (i) \mathbb{M} is primitive. Then by Perron-Frobenius Theorem the maximum eigenvalue $\rho(\mathbb{M})$ of \mathbb{M} is unique with maximum modulus, i.e.

$$\rho(\mathbb{M}) = \lambda_1 > |\lambda_j|, \quad (2.84)$$

for all $2 \leq j \leq M$, where λ_j are eigenvalues of \mathbb{M} . Moreover, a positive eigenvector $\mathbf{v}_1 = (v_1, v_2, \cdots, v_M)^t$ is associated with λ_1 [29], [30]. Furthermore, Jordan canonical

form theorem states that a non-singular matrix $\mathbb{P} = [P_{ij}]_{M \times M}$ exists, such that the real Jordan canonical form of \mathbb{M} is

$$\hat{\mathbb{M}} \equiv \mathbb{P}\mathbb{M}\mathbb{P}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & J_{n_2} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & \cdots & J_{n_q} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.85)$$

where J_{n_k} , $2 \leq k \leq q$ are real Jordan blocks and the associated eigenvalue λ_k of J_{n_k} satisfies (2.84). Moreover, the positivity of eigenvector \mathbf{v}_1 implies that \mathbb{P} can be chosen such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^M P_{ij} = 1 \quad (2.86)$$

and

$$P_{1j} > 0 \quad (2.87)$$

for all $1 \leq j \leq M$. Therefore, by (2.86)

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbb{M}^n \hat{X}| &= |\mathbb{P}\mathbb{M}^n \hat{X}| = |\mathbb{P}\mathbb{M}^n \mathbb{P}^{-1} \mathbb{P} \hat{X}| \\ &= |(\mathbb{P}\mathbb{M}\mathbb{P}^{-1})^n \mathbb{P} \hat{X}| = |\hat{\mathbb{M}}^n \mathbb{P} \hat{X}| \\ &= \lambda_1^n \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^M P_{1j} \hat{X}_j + \sum_{j=1}^M q_{n,j} \hat{X}_j \right\} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} q_{n,j} = 0, \quad (2.88)$$

for all $1 \leq j \leq M$, by (2.84).

Hence, by (2.87) and (2.88),

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \rho(|\mathbb{M}^n \hat{X}|) = \log \lambda_1. \quad (2.89)$$

Combining with (2.82), (2.83) and (2.89), (2.80) follows.

(ii) \mathbb{M} is irreducible.

If \mathbb{M} is irreducible but imprimitive, then $k \geq 2$ exists, such that

$$\lambda_1 = |\lambda_2| = \cdots = |\lambda_k| > |\lambda_j|$$

for all $j > k$. Then, by applying a permutation, \mathbb{M} can be expressed as

$$\mathbb{M} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & M_{12} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & M_{23} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \vdots & \vdots & 0 & M_{k-1,k} \\ M_{k1} & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.90)$$

and,

$$\mathbb{M}^k = \begin{bmatrix} M_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & M_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & M_k \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.91)$$

where $M_j = M_{j,j+1}M_{j+1,j+2} \cdots M_{j-1,j}$ is primitive with the maximum eigenvalue λ_1^k , see [29], [30]. Hence, by the same argument as in (i)

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \rho(|\mathbb{M}^{nk} \hat{X}|) = \lambda_1^k,$$

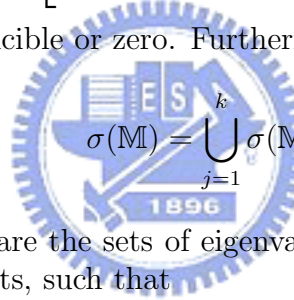
(2.80) follows.

(iii) \mathbb{M} is reducible.

In this case, by applying a permutation, \mathbb{M} can be expressed as a block upper triangular matrix:

$$\mathbb{M} = \begin{bmatrix} M_{11} & M_{12} & \cdots & \cdots & M_{1k} \\ 0 & M_{22} & \cdots & \cdots & M_{2k} \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \ddots & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & M_{kk} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.92)$$

where M_{ii} is either irreducible or zero. Furthermore,

$$\sigma(\mathbb{M}) = \bigcup_{j=1}^k \sigma(\mathbb{M}_{jj}),$$


where $\sigma(\mathbb{M})$ and $\sigma(\mathbb{M}_{jj})$ are the sets of eigenvalues of \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{M}_{jj} , respectively. In particular, $1 \leq j \leq k$ exists, such that

$$\rho(\mathbb{M}_{jj}) = \rho(\mathbb{M}) = \lambda_1. \quad (2.93)$$

[29], [30]. Therefore, applying (2.83), (2.93) and the same argument as in (ii) yields (2.80).

The proof is complete. □

Definition 2.1.13. Let \mathcal{D} denote the set of all diagonal cycle:

$$\mathcal{D} = \{\beta_1\beta_2 \cdots \beta_K\beta_{K+1} \mid \beta_1\beta_2 \cdots \beta_K\beta_{K+1} \text{ satisfies (2.67) and (2.68)}\},$$

define

$$h_*(\mathbb{A}_2) = \sup_{m \geq 2, \beta_1\beta_2 \cdots \beta_{K+1} \in \mathcal{D}} \frac{1}{mK} \log \rho(S_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} S_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots S_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}). \quad (2.94)$$

and

$$h'_*(\mathbb{A}_2) = \sup_{m \geq 2, \beta_1 \cdots \beta_K \in \mathcal{D}} \frac{1}{mK} \log \rho(W_{m;\beta_1\beta_2} W_{m;\beta_2\beta_3} \cdots W_{m;\beta_K\beta_1}). \quad (2.95)$$

Then Theorem 2.1.12 implies

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq h_*(\mathbb{A}_2) \text{ and } h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq h'_*(\mathbb{A}_2). \quad (2.96)$$

Knowing whether the equality holds for \mathbb{A}_2 is of interest, since $h_*(\mathbb{A}_2)$ and $h'_*(\mathbb{A}_2)$ are more manageable than $h(\mathbb{A}_2)$. However, a class of \mathbb{A}_2 has been found for what equality (2.96) holds; details can be found in Example 2.1.14. of the next subsection.



2.1.3 Examples of transition matrices with positive entropy

In this subsection, various examples are studied to elucidate the power of Theorem 2.1.12 in verifying that the entropies are positive. First, Golden-Mean type transition matrices are studied.

Example 2.1.14. (A) Golden-Mean type

When two symbols on two-cell horizontal lattice $\mathbb{Z}_{2 \times 1}$ and vertical lattice $\mathbb{Z}_{1 \times 2}$ are considered and both transition matrices are given by golden-mean type, i.e.,

$$\mathbb{H}_1 = \mathbb{V}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

then the (horizontal) transition matrix \mathbb{A}_2 on $\mathbb{Z}_{2 \times 2}$ is

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.97)$$

as in [46]. Verifying

$$\mathbb{B}_2 = \tilde{\mathbb{A}}_2 = \tilde{\mathbb{B}}_2 = \mathbb{A}_2. \quad (2.98)$$

is also easy. Furthermore, for any $n \geq 2$,

$$\mathbb{A}_{n+1} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n+1} & B_{n+1} \\ C_{n+1} & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} A_n & B_n & A_n & 0 \\ C_n & 0 & C_n & 0 \\ A_n & B_n & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.99)$$

where

$$A_{n+1} = \begin{bmatrix} A_n & B_n \\ C_n & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

with $C_n = B_n^t$ and $A_n^t = A_n$, i.e., \mathbb{A}_n are symmetric for all $n \geq 2$.

Moreover, the following two properties hold:

(i) For any $m \geq 2$,

$$C_{m;11} = \mathbb{A}_{m-1}, \quad (2.100)$$

where

$$\mathbb{A}_1 \equiv \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}a_{11} & a_{12}a_{21} \\ a_{13}a_{31} & a_{14}a_{41} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.101)$$

and

(ii) for any $m \geq 2$,

$$\frac{1}{m} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_{m-1}) \leq h(\mathbb{A}_2) \leq \frac{1}{m} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_m). \quad (2.102)$$

Therefore,

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) = h_*(\mathbb{A}_2) > 0. \quad (2.103)$$

The numerical results appears in Example 2.2.12.

(B) Simplified Golden-Mean type.

Consider

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.104)$$

(2.104) cannot be generated from one-dimensional transition matrices \mathbb{H}_1 and \mathbb{V}_1 , as in the Golden-Mean type (2.97). Equation (2.104) is obtained by letting $a_{23} = a_{32} = 0$ in the Golden-Mean type (2.97). (2.98) is easily verified, and for any $n \geq 2$,

$$\mathbb{A}_{n+1} = \begin{bmatrix} & \mathbb{A}_n & \mathbb{A}_{n-1} & 0 \\ \mathbb{A}_{n-1} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.105)$$

Furthermore, (i), (ii) and (2.103) hold as in (A).

(C) Generally, if \mathbb{A}_2 satisfies the following three conditions

(C1) $\mathbb{B}_2 = \mathbb{A}_2$,

(C2) $a_{1j} = 1$ if $A_{2;j} \neq 0$ for $1 \leq j \leq 4$,

(C3) $\tilde{A}_{2;1} \geq A_{2;j}$ for $1 \leq j \leq 4$,

then (i), (ii) and (2.103) hold. The matrices \mathbb{A}_2 , which satisfy (C1), (C2) and (C3) can be listed as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & a_{23} & 0 \\ 1 & a_{32} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.106)$$

and

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & a_{23} & a_{24} \\ 1 & a_{32} & 1 & a_{34} \\ 1 & a_{34} & a_{43} & a_{44} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.107)$$

where a_{ij} is either 0 or 1 in (2.106) and (2.107).

Notably, if (C2) and (C3) are replaced by

(C2)' $a_{4j} = 1$ if $A_{2;j} \neq 0$ for $1 \leq j \leq 4$,

(C3)' $\tilde{A}_{2;4} \geq A_{2;j}$ for $1 \leq j \leq 4$,

then for any $m \geq 2$,

$$C_{m;44} = \mathbb{A}_{m-1} \quad (2.108)$$

with

$$\mathbb{A}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} a_{41}a_{14} & a_{42}a_{24} \\ a_{43}a_{34} & a_{44}a_{44} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.109)$$

and property (ii) and equation (2.103) hold.

In Example 2.1.14, the diagonal parts $A_{2;1}$ or $A_{2;4}$ are dominant. In this case, only $C_{m;11}$ or $C_{m;44}$ is required to apply Theorem 2.1.12. In contrast, when $\mathbb{A}_{2;1}$ and $\mathbb{A}_{2;4}$ are no longer dominant as in the following examples, $A_{2;2}$ and $A_{2;3}$ can complement each other to establish that the entropy is positive.

Example 2.1.15. (A) Consider

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.110)$$

that (2.98) holds can be verified and

$$C_{2;11} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad C_{2;22} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C_{2;33} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad C_{2;44} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Therefore,

$$S_{2;14}S_{2;41} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq \frac{1}{4} \log 2.$$

(B) Consider

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.111)$$

Then verifying

$$\mathbb{B}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \tilde{\mathbb{B}}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{\mathbb{A}}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

is simple.

Furthermore,

$$C_{2;11} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad C_{2;22} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C_{2;33} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad C_{2;44} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$U_{2;11} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad U_{2;22} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$U_{2;33} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad U_{2;44} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Now, for any diagonal cycle, $\beta_1 \cdots \beta_K \beta_1$, $\rho(S_{2;\beta_1\beta_2} \cdots S_{2;\beta_K\beta_1}) = 1$, $h(\mathbb{A}_2) > 0$ cannot be established.

However,

$$W_{2;11}W_{2;14}W_{2;41} = U_{2;11}U_{2;22}U_{2;33} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

which implies

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq \frac{1}{6} \log g,$$

where

$$g = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \sqrt{5}) \quad (2.112)$$

is the golden mean, which is a root of $\lambda^2 - \lambda - 1 = 0$.

This example demonstrates the asymmetry of \mathbb{A}_2 and \mathbb{B}_2 in applying Theorem 2.1.12, to verify the entropy is positive. Both \mathbb{C}_m and \mathbb{U}_m are typically checked for completeness.

Example 2.1.16. Consider

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.113)$$

Then it is easy to check that

$$W_{2;11}W_{2;14}W_{2;41} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad S_{3;44} = \begin{bmatrix} G & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

and

$$S_{4;44} = \begin{bmatrix} G & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & e_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

where

$$G = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } e_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.114)$$

Therefore,

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq \max\left\{\frac{1}{6} \log 2, \frac{1}{3} \log g, \frac{1}{4} \log g\right\} = \frac{1}{3} \log g.$$

Example 2.1.17. Consider

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.115)$$

Then

$$\mathbb{B}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \tilde{\mathbb{A}}_2 \text{ and } \tilde{\mathbb{B}}_2 = \mathbb{A}_2.$$

Therefore

$$C_{2;11} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \equiv G'.$$

Furthermore,

$$C_{4;11} = G' \otimes e_1 \otimes G'$$

and

$$C_{2m;11} = G' \otimes (\otimes (e_1 \otimes G')^{m-1})$$

can be proved, and which implies

$$\frac{1}{2m} \log \rho(C_{2m;11}) = \frac{1}{2} \log g. \quad (2.116)$$

for all $m \geq 1$. Hence, $h(\mathbb{A}_2) \geq \frac{1}{2} \log g$. Moreover, in Remark 2.2.10 (ii), it can be shown that $h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \frac{1}{2} \log g$



2.2 Trace operators \mathbb{T}_m

The preceding section introduces connecting operators \mathbb{C}_m , which can be used to find lower bounds of spatial entropy. This section studies the diagonal part of \mathbb{C}_m , which can be used to investigate the trace of \mathbb{A}_n^m . When \mathbb{A}_2 is symmetric, \mathbb{T}_{2m} gives the upper bound of spatial entropy.

The trace operator is defined first.

Definition 2.2.1. For $m \geq 2$, the m -th order trace operator \mathbb{T}_m of \mathbb{A}_2 is defined by

$$\mathbb{T}_m = \begin{bmatrix} C_{m;11} & C_{m;22} \\ C_{m;33} & C_{m;44} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{m;11} & S_{m;14} \\ S_{m;41} & S_{m;44} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.117)$$

where $C_{m;ij}$ is as given in (1.23) or (2.29).

Similarly, the m -th order trace operator \mathbb{T}'_m of \mathbb{B}_2 is defined by

$$\mathbb{T}'_m = \begin{bmatrix} U_{m;11} & U_{m;22} \\ U_{m;33} & U_{m;44} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} W_{m;11} & W_{m;14} \\ W_{m;41} & W_{m;44} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.118)$$

where $U_{m;ij}$ is as given in (2.31).

The relationships between the trace operator \mathbb{T}_m , \mathbb{T}'_m and \mathbb{A}_m , \mathbb{B}_m are given as follows.

Theorem 2.2.2. For any $m \geq 2$,

$$\mathbb{T}_m = (\mathbb{B}_m)_{2^m \times 2^m} \circ \begin{bmatrix} E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{21} \\ a_{31} & a_{41} \end{bmatrix} & E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} a_{12} & a_{22} \\ a_{32} & a_{42} \end{bmatrix} \\ E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} a_{13} & a_{23} \\ a_{33} & a_{43} \end{bmatrix} & E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} a_{14} & a_{24} \\ a_{34} & a_{44} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.119)$$

and

$$\mathbb{T}'_m = (\mathbb{A}_m)_{2^m \times 2^m} \circ \begin{bmatrix} E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{21} \\ b_{31} & b_{41} \end{bmatrix} & E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} b_{12} & b_{22} \\ b_{32} & b_{42} \end{bmatrix} \\ E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} b_{13} & b_{23} \\ b_{33} & b_{43} \end{bmatrix} & E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} b_{14} & b_{24} \\ b_{34} & b_{44} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.120)$$

In particular,

$$\mathbb{T}_m \leq \mathbb{B}_m \text{ and } \mathbb{T}'_m \leq \mathbb{A}_m. \quad (2.121)$$

Proof. By (2.117) and (2.29),

$$\mathbb{T}_m = (\mathbb{B}_m)_{2^m \times 2^m} \circ \begin{bmatrix} E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{21} \\ a_{31} & a_{41} \end{bmatrix} & E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} a_{12} & a_{22} \\ a_{32} & a_{42} \end{bmatrix} \\ E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} a_{13} & a_{23} \\ a_{33} & a_{43} \end{bmatrix} & E_{2^{m-2} \times 2^{m-2}} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} a_{14} & a_{24} \\ a_{34} & a_{44} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}.$$

A similar result also holds for \mathbb{T}'_m . Hence, (2.121) follows immediately.

The proof is complete. \square

Notably, the trace operator \mathbb{T}_m (or \mathbb{T}'_m) preserves all periodic words $a_{i_1 i_2} a_{i_2 i_3} \cdots a_{i_m i_{m+1}}$ ($b_{i_1 i_2} b_{i_2 i_3} \cdots b_{i_m i_{m+1}}$) with $i_{m+1} = i_1$ of length m systematically as \mathbb{B}_m (or \mathbb{A}_m).

The traces of the elementary patterns are defined accordingly.

Definition 2.2.3. For $m, n \geq 2$ and $1 \leq \alpha \leq 4$, define

$$t_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)} = \text{tr}(A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)}), \quad (2.122)$$

$$\text{tr}(X_{m,n;\alpha}) = (t_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)})_{1 \leq k \leq 2^{m-1}}, \quad (2.123)$$

and

$$t_{m,n} = (\text{tr}(X_{m,n;1}), \text{tr}(X_{m,n;4}))^t, \quad (2.124)$$

which are 2^{m-1} and 2^m vectors, respectively.

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^m) &= \text{tr}(\sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n;1}^{(k)} + \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} A_{m,n;4}^{(k)}) \\ &= |\text{tr}(X_{m,n;1})| + |\text{tr}(X_{m,n;4})| \\ &= |t_{m,n}|. \end{aligned} \quad (2.125)$$

First prove that \mathbb{T}_m can reduce the traces of higher-order to lower-order.

Proposition 2.2.4. For $m \geq 2$ and $n \geq 2$,

$$t_{m,n+1} = \mathbb{T}_m t_{m,n} \quad (2.126)$$

Proof. By Theorem 2.1.5, it is easy to see

$$\begin{pmatrix} \text{tr}(X_{m,n+1;1}) \\ \text{tr}(X_{m,n+1;4}) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} C_{m;11} \text{tr}(X_{m,n;1}) + C_{m;22} \text{tr}(X_{m,n;4}) \\ C_{m;33} \text{tr}(X_{m,n;1}) + C_{m;44} \text{tr}(X_{m,n;4}) \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then, (2.126) follows immediately.

The proof is complete. □

Repeatedly applying Proposition 2.2.4 yields the following result.

Theorem 2.2.5. For $m \geq 2$ and $n \geq 1$,

$$\text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_{n+2}^m) = |\mathbb{T}_m^n t_{m,2}| \quad (2.127)$$

$$\equiv \sum_{\beta_k \in \{1,4\}} |S_{m;\beta_1 \beta_2} S_{m;\beta_2 \beta_3} \cdots S_{m;\beta_n \beta_{n+1}} \text{tr}(X_{m,2;\beta_{n+1}})|. \quad (2.128)$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^m) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} \text{tr}(A_{m,n;1;1}^{(k)}) + \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} \text{tr}(A_{m,n;1;4}^{(k)}) + \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} \text{tr}(A_{m,n;4;1}^{(k)}) + \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m-1}} \text{tr}(A_{m,n;4;4}^{(k)}) \\ &= |\text{tr}(X_{m,n;1;1})| + |\text{tr}(X_{m,n;1;4})| + |\text{tr}(X_{m,n;4;1})| + |\text{tr}(X_{m,n;4;4})| \\ &= |\text{tr}(S_{m;11} X_{m,n-1;1})| + |\text{tr}(S_{m;14} X_{m,n-1;4})| + |\text{tr}(S_{m;41} X_{m,n-1;1})| + |\text{tr}(S_{m;44} X_{m,n-1;4})| \\ &= |\mathbb{T}_m t_{m,n-1}|, \end{aligned}$$

here Theorem 2.1.4 is used.

Reduction on n , yields

$$\text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^m) = |\mathbb{T}_m^{n-2} t_{m,2}|.$$

Finally, (2.128) follows from (2.117) and (2.124).

The proof is complete. □

The following lemma is needed to show (1.33).

Lemma 2.2.6. *Let V_m be a nonnegative eigenvector of \mathbb{T}_m with respect to the maximum eigenvalue $\rho(\mathbb{T}_m)$. If $\rho(\mathbb{T}_m) > 0$, then*

$$\langle V_m, t_{m,2} \rangle > 0,$$

where $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ denotes the standard inner product of \mathbb{C}^{2^m} .

Proof. Let $V_m = (u_1, \dots, u_M, u'_1, \dots, u'_M)$ be a nonnegative eigenvector of \mathbb{T}_m , where $M = 2^{m-1}$. Since $\rho(\mathbb{T}_m) > 0$, by Lemma 2.1.11, if $u_k > 0$ (or $u'_l > 0$) then $\text{tr}(A_{m,2;1}^{(k)}) > 0$ (or $\text{tr}(A_{m,2;4}^{(l)}) > 0$). The result follows by (2.124).

The proof is complete. \square

Now, (1.33) can be proved.

Theorem 2.2.7. *For any $m \geq 2$,*

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^m) = \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_m), \quad (2.129)$$

and

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \limsup_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m} \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_m). \quad (2.130)$$

Furthermore, if \mathbb{A}_n are primitive for all $n \geq 2$, then *limsup* in (2.129) and (2.130) can be replaced by *lim*, i.e.,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^m) = \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_m) \quad (2.131)$$

and

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m} \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_m). \quad (2.132)$$

Proof. By Perron-Frobenius theorem, for all $n \geq 2$, we have

$$\limsup_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m} \log \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^m) = \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n). \quad (2.133)$$

Therefore, by (2.133) and Theorem 2.2.5, we have

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n) = \limsup_{n, m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{mn} \log \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^m) = \limsup_{n, m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{mn} \log |\mathbb{T}_m^n t_{m,2}|.$$

By Lemma 2.2.6 and by argument used to prove Theorem 2.1.12,

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log |\mathbb{T}_m^n t_{m,2}| = \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_m) \quad (2.134)$$

can be shown, and (2.129) and (2.130) follow immediately.

When \mathbb{A}_n are primitive for all $n \geq 2$, (2.131) and (2.132) follow.

The proof is complete. \square

Now, the symmetry of \mathbb{A}_2 is established to be able to be inherited by the higher order matrices.

Proposition 2.2.8. *If \mathbb{A}_2 is symmetric, then \mathbb{A}_n is also symmetric for each $n \geq 3$.*

Proof. The proposition is proven by induction on n .

Let $\mathbb{M} = \begin{bmatrix} M_1 & M_2 \\ M_3 & M_4 \end{bmatrix}$ be a square matrix and M_i , $1 \leq i \leq 4$, all be square matrices.

Then, the transpose matrix \mathbb{M}^t of \mathbb{M} is

$$\mathbb{M}^t = \begin{bmatrix} M_1^t & M_3^t \\ M_2^t & M_4^t \end{bmatrix}.$$

Therefore, \mathbb{M} is symmetric if and only if

$$M_1^t = M_1, \quad M_3^t = M_2 \quad \text{and} \quad M_4^t = M_4.$$

In particular, \mathbb{A}_2 is symmetric if and only if

$$A_{2;1}^t = A_{2;1}, \quad A_{2;3}^t = A_{2;2} \quad \text{and} \quad A_{2;4}^t = A_{2;4}. \quad (2.135)$$

Now, \mathbb{A}_n is assumed to be symmetric, such that

$$A_{n;1}^t = A_{n;1}, \quad A_{n;3}^t = A_{n;2} \quad \text{and} \quad A_{n;4}^t = A_{n;4}. \quad (2.136)$$

Since

$$A_{n+1;\alpha} = [A_{2;\alpha}]_{2 \times 2} \circ \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;1} & A_{n;2} \\ A_{n;3} & A_{n;4} \end{bmatrix},$$

(2.135) and (2.136) imply

$$A_{n+1;1}^t = A_{n+1;1}, \quad A_{n+1;3}^t = A_{n+1;2} \quad \text{and} \quad A_{n+1;4}^t = A_{n+1;4}.$$

Hence, \mathbb{A}_{n+1} is symmetric.

The proof is complete. □

Now, upper estimates of spatial entropy $h(\mathbb{A}_2)$ are obtained when \mathbb{A}_2 is symmetric.

Theorem 2.2.9. *If \mathbb{A}_2 is symmetric then for any $m \geq 1$,*

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \leq \frac{1}{2m} \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_{2m}). \quad (2.137)$$

Proof. By Proposition 2.2.8, \mathbb{A}_n^{2m} is symmetric for any $m \geq 1$. The symmetry of \mathbb{A}_n^{2m} implies that all eigenvalues of \mathbb{A}_n^{2m} are non-negative. Hence,

$$\rho(\mathbb{A}_n)^{2m} = \rho(\mathbb{A}_n^{2m}) \leq \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^{2m}). \quad (2.138)$$

On the other hand, the subadditivity of (2.58) implies

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \leq \frac{1}{(2mk+1)n} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^{2mk}|. \quad (2.139)$$

Therefore, (2.138), (2.139) and (2.127) imply

$$\begin{aligned} h(\mathbb{A}_2) &\leq \lim_{n,k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{(2mk+1)n} \log |\mathbb{A}_n^{2mk}| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2mn} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_n^{2m}) \\ &\leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2mn} \log \text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^{2m}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2mn} \log |\mathbb{T}_{2m}^{n-2} t_{2m,2}| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{2m} \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_{2m}). \end{aligned}$$

The proof is complete. □

Notably, \mathbb{T}_m (or \mathbb{T}'_m) yields a better estimate than \mathbb{B}_n (or \mathbb{A}_n) whenever

$$h(\mathbb{A}_2) \leq \frac{1}{m} \log \rho(\mathbb{T}_m) \quad (2.140)$$

holds.

Remark 2.2.10. (i) *The problem in which \mathbb{A}_n are primitive for all $n \geq 2$ has already been investigated [6]. In [6], various sufficient conditions have been found to ensure that \mathbb{A}_n are primitive for all $n \geq 2$. Notably, limit in (2.131) and (2.132), instead of limsup in (2.129) and (2.130), causes \mathbb{A}_n to have a unique maximum eigenvalue with a maximum modulus. Therefore, \mathbb{A}_n may be imprimitive but (2.131) and (2.132) still hold. For example, Golden-Mean type and simplified Golden-Mean type in Example 2.1.14 are imprimitive but (2.131) and (2.132) still hold. The remaining matrices of these \mathbb{A}_n are primitive if their rows and columns with zero entries are removed.*

(ii) *In general, limsup cannot be replaced by limit. For example, consider*

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.141)$$

Further computation shows that

$$\mathbb{T}_{2m+1} = 0$$

and

$$\mathbb{T}_{2m} = \begin{bmatrix} (\otimes(G' \otimes e_1)^{m-1}) \otimes G' & e_1 \otimes (\otimes(G' \otimes e_1)^{m-1}) \\ e_1 \otimes (\otimes(G' \otimes e_1)^{m-1}) & e_1 \otimes (\otimes(G' \otimes e_1)^{m-1}) \end{bmatrix}$$

for all $m \geq 1$, where $G' = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $e_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

Therefore, $\rho(\mathbb{T}_{2m+1}) = 0$. Furthermore, it can be shown that

$$\rho(\mathbb{T}_{2m}) \leq g^m + g^{m-1}. \quad (2.142)$$

Combining (2.116) and (2.142), $h(\mathbb{A}_2) = \frac{1}{2} \log g$. Hence (2.130) holds only for limsup. Unlike (2.62) this example demonstrates that (2.140) does not hold for any $n = 2m + 1$. This phenomenon is a disadvantage in determining the upper estimate of entropy associated with replacing \mathbb{A}_n with \mathbb{T}_n .

Example 2.2.11. Consider

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

which was studied as in Example 2.16. Now, \mathbb{A}_2 is asymmetric. Furthermore,

$$\text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_2^2) = 3$$

can be obtained for all $n \geq 2$. Hence, (2.138) and then (2.137) fail when $m = 1$. However,

$$C_{4;44} = \begin{bmatrix} G & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & e_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

where $G = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $e_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Hence $\text{tr}(\mathbb{A}_n^4)$ grows at least exponentially with exponent $\rho(G) = g$, the golden-mean.

Whether (2.137) holds for some $m \geq 2$ is of interest.

Example 2.2.12. Consider the Golden-Mean type

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

which was studied as in Example 2.1.14. \mathbb{A}_2 is symmetric, so the numerical results can be obtained as follows.

m	$\rho(\mathbb{A}_{m-1})^{\frac{1}{m}}$	$\rho(\mathbb{T}_m)^{\frac{1}{m}}$	$\rho(\mathbb{A}_m)^{\frac{1}{m}}$
2	1.3415037626	1.5537739740	1.5537739740
3	1.3804413572	1.4892228485	1.5370592754
4	1.4041128626	1.5069022259	1.5284545258
5	1.4201397131	1.5017251916	1.5233415461
6	1.4316975290	1.5035148094	1.5199401525
7	1.4404277508	1.5028716910	1.5175154443
8	1.4472546963	1.5031163748	1.5156994341
9	1.4527395436	1.5030208210	1.5142884861
10	1.4572426033	1.5030591603	1.5131606734
11	1.4610058138	1.5030435026	1.5122385423
12	1.4641976583	1.5030500001	1.5114705290
13	1.4669390746	1.5030472703	1.5108209763
14	1.4693191202	1.5030484295	1.5102644390
15	1.4714048275	1.5030479329	1.5097822725
16	1.4732476160	1.5030481473	1.5093605030

Notably, both $\rho(\mathbb{A}_m)^{\frac{1}{m}}$ and $\rho(\mathbb{T}_{2m})^{\frac{1}{2m}}$ are monotonically decreasing in m . In contrast, $\rho(\mathbb{A}_{m-1})^{\frac{1}{m}}$ and $\rho(\mathbb{T}_{2m+1})^{\frac{1}{2m+1}}$ are monotonically increasing in m , that $\rho(\mathbb{T}_{2m})^{\frac{1}{2m}}$ gives better upper bound than $\rho(\mathbb{A}_m)^{\frac{1}{m}}$. That $\rho(\mathbb{T}_{2m+1})^{\frac{1}{2m+1}}$ are lower bounds is conjectured. If they were, then $\rho(\mathbb{T}_m)^{\frac{1}{m}}$ would yield a very sharp estimates.

2.3 More symbols on larger lattice

As mentioned in the introduction, many physical and engineering problems involve many (more than two) symbols and larger $k \times k$ lattices, where $k \geq 3$. Therefore, the results found in the previous sections must be extended to any finite number of symbols $p \geq 2$ on any finite square lattice $\mathbb{Z}_{2l \times 2l}$, $l \geq 1$, where

$$2l = \begin{cases} k & \text{if } k \text{ is even} \\ 2k - 2 & \text{if } k \text{ is odd} \end{cases}$$

. The results are only outlined here, and the details are left to the readers. Proofs of theorems are omitted for brevity.

For fixed $p \geq 2$ and $l \geq 1$, denote by

$$q = p^{l^2}. \quad (2.143)$$

The horizontal and vertical transition matrices are given by

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} a_{1,1} & a_{1,2} & \cdots & a_{1,q^2} \\ a_{2,1} & a_{2,2} & \cdots & a_{2,q^2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{q^2,1} & a_{q^2,2} & \cdots & a_{q^2,q^2} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.144)$$

and

$$\mathbb{B}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} b_{1,1} & b_{1,2} & \cdots & b_{1,q^2} \\ b_{2,1} & b_{2,2} & \cdots & b_{2,q^2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ b_{q^2,1} & b_{q^2,2} & \cdots & b_{q^2,q^2} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.145)$$

respectively.

Now, \mathbb{A}_2 and \mathbb{B}_2 are related to each other by

$$\mathbb{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} A_{2;1} & A_{2;2} & \cdots & A_{2;q} \\ A_{2;q+1} & A_{2;q+2} & \cdots & A_{2;2q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{2;q(q-1)+1} & \cdots & \cdots & A_{2;q^2} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.146)$$

where

$$A_{2;\alpha} = \begin{bmatrix} b_{\alpha,1} & b_{\alpha,2} & \cdots & b_{\alpha,q} \\ b_{\alpha,q+1} & b_{\alpha,q+2} & \cdots & b_{\alpha,2q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ b_{\alpha,q(q-1)+1} & b_{\alpha,q(q-1)+2} & \cdots & b_{\alpha,q^2} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.147)$$

and

$$\mathbb{B}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} B_{2;1} & B_{2;2} & \cdots & B_{2;q} \\ B_{2;q+1} & B_{2;q+2} & \cdots & B_{2;2q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ B_{2;q(q-1)+1} & \cdots & \cdots & B_{2;q^2} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.148)$$

where

$$B_{2;\alpha} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{\alpha,1} & a_{\alpha,2} & \cdots & a_{\alpha,q} \\ a_{\alpha,q+1} & a_{\alpha,q+2} & \cdots & a_{\alpha,2q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{\alpha,q(q-1)+1} & a_{\alpha,q(q-1)+2} & \cdots & a_{\alpha,q^2} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.149)$$

respectively, where $1 \leq \alpha \leq q^2$. The column matrices $\widetilde{\mathbb{A}}_2$ and $\widetilde{\mathbb{B}}_2$, \mathbb{A}_2 and \mathbb{B}_2 are defined as in (2.1) and (2.2). For higher order transition matrices \mathbb{A}_n , $n \geq 3$, are defined as

$$\mathbb{A}_n = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;1} & A_{n;2} & \cdots & A_{n;q} \\ A_{n;q+1} & A_{n;q+2} & \cdots & A_{n;2q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{n;q(q-1)+1} & A_{n;(q-1)q+2} & \cdots & A_{n;q^2} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.150)$$

where

$$\mathbb{A}_{n;\alpha} = \begin{bmatrix} b_{\alpha,1}A_{n-1;1} & b_{\alpha,2}A_{n-1;2} & \cdots & b_{\alpha,q}A_{n-1;q} \\ b_{\alpha,q+1}A_{n-1;q+1} & b_{\alpha,q+2}A_{n-1;q+2} & \cdots & b_{\alpha,2q}A_{n-1;2q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ b_{\alpha,q(q-1)+1}A_{n-1;q(q-1)+1} & b_{\alpha,q(q-1)+2}A_{n-1;q(q-1)+2} & \cdots & b_{\alpha,q^2}A_{n;q^2} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.151)$$

Rewriting the indices of $A_{n;\alpha}$ as follows, facilitates matrix multiplication.

$$\mathbb{A}_n = \begin{bmatrix} A_{n;11} & A_{n;12} & \cdots & A_{n;1q} \\ A_{n;21} & A_{n;22} & \cdots & A_{n;2q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{n;q1} & A_{n;q2} & \cdots & A_{n;qq} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.152)$$

Clearly, $A_{n;\alpha} = A_{n;j_1j_2}$, where

$$\alpha = \alpha(j_1, j_2) = q(j_1 - 1) + j_2. \quad (2.153)$$

For $m \geq 2$, the elementary pattern in the entries of \mathbb{A}_n^m is given by

$$A_{n;j_1j_2}A_{n;j_2j_3} \cdots A_{n;j_mj_{m+1}},$$

where $j_s \in \{1, 2, \dots, q\}$.

The lexicographic order for multiple indices

$$J_{m+1} = (j_1j_2 \cdots j_mj_{m+1})$$

is introduced by

$$\chi(J_{m+1}) = 1 + \sum_{l=2}^m q^{m-l}(j_l - 1). \quad (2.154)$$

Specify

$$A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)} = A_{n;j_1j_2}A_{n;j_2j_3} \cdots A_{n;j_mj_{m+1}},$$

where $\alpha = \alpha(j_1, j_{m+1})$ satisfies (2.153) and $k = \chi(J_{m+1})$ is as given in (2.154). Based on this arrangement, \mathbb{A}_n^m can be written as

$$\mathbb{A}_n^m = \begin{bmatrix} A_{m,n;1} & A_{m,n;2} & \cdots & A_{m,n;q} \\ A_{m,n;q+1} & A_{m,n;q+2} & \cdots & A_{m,n;2q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{m,n;q(q-1)+1} & A_{m,n;q(q-1)+2} & \cdots & A_{m,n;q^2} \end{bmatrix},$$

where

$$A_{m,n;\alpha} = \sum_{k=1}^{q^{m-1}} A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)}.$$

Moreover, $X_{m,n;\alpha} = (A_{m,n;\alpha}^{(k)})^t$, where $1 \leq k \leq q^{m-1}$ and $X_{m,n;\alpha}$ is a q^{m-1} -vector that comprise all elementary patterns in $A_{m,n;\alpha}$. The ordering matrix $\mathbb{X}_{m,n}$ of \mathbb{A}_n^m is now defined as

$$\mathbb{X}_{m,n} = \begin{bmatrix} X_{m,n;1} & X_{m,n;2} & \cdots & X_{m,n;q} \\ X_{m,n;q+1} & X_{m,n;q+2} & \cdots & X_{m,n;2q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ X_{m,n;q(q-1)+1} & X_{m,n;q(q-1)+2} & \cdots & X_{m,n;q^2} \end{bmatrix},$$

and $X_{m,n+1;\beta}$ can be reduced to $X_{2,n;\beta}$ by multiplication with connecting matrices $C_{m;\alpha,\beta}$. The connecting operator \mathbb{C}_m is defined as follows.

Definition 2.3.1. For $m \geq 2$, define

$$\mathbb{C}_m = \begin{bmatrix} C_{m;1,1} & C_{m;1,2} & \cdots & C_{m;1,q^2} \\ C_{m;2,1} & C_{m;2,2} & \cdots & C_{m;2,q^2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ C_{m;q^2,1} & C_{m;q^2,2} & \cdots & C_{m;q^2,q^2} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} S_{m;1,1} & \cdots & S_{m;1,q} & \cdots & S_{m;q,1} & \cdots & S_{m;q,q} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ S_{m;1,q(q-1)+1} & \cdots & S_{m;1,q^2} & \cdots & S_{m;q,q(q-1)+1} & \cdots & S_{m;q,q^2} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ S_{m;q(q-1)+1,1} & \cdots & S_{m;q(q-1)+1,q} & \cdots & S_{m;q^2,1} & \cdots & S_{m;q^2,q} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ S_{m;q(q-1)+1,q(q-1)+1} & \cdots & S_{m;q(q-1)+1,q^2} & \cdots & S_{m;q^2,q(q-1)+1} & \cdots & S_{m;q^2,q^2} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.155)$$

where

$$C_{m;\alpha,\beta} = ((B_{2;\alpha})_{q \times q} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{B}_2^{m-2})_{q \times q})_{q^{m-1} \times q^{m-1}} \circ (E_{q^{m-2} \times q^{m-2}} \otimes \tilde{A}_{2;\beta})_{q^{m-1} \times q^{m-1}}. \quad (2.156)$$

Like Theorem 2.1.4, $C_{m+1;\alpha,\beta}$ can be obtained in terms of $C_{m;\gamma,\beta}$.

Theorem 2.3.2. For any $m \geq 2$ and $1 \leq \alpha, \beta \leq q^2$

$$C_{m+1;\alpha,\beta} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{\alpha;1} C_{m;1,\beta} & a_{\alpha;2} C_{m;2,\beta} & \cdots & a_{\alpha;q} C_{m;q,\beta} \\ a_{\alpha;q+1} C_{m;q+1,\beta} & a_{\alpha;q+2} C_{m;q+2,\beta} & \cdots & a_{\alpha;2q} C_{m;2q,\beta} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{\alpha;q(q-1)+1} C_{m;q(q-1)+1,\beta} & a_{\alpha;q(q-1)+2} C_{m;q(q-1)+2,\beta} & \cdots & a_{\alpha;q^2} C_{m;q^2,\beta} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Denote by

$$A_{m,n+1;\alpha}^{(k)} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{m,n+1;\alpha;1}^{(k)} & A_{m,n+1;\alpha;2}^{(k)} & \cdots & A_{m,n+1;\alpha;q}^{(k)} \\ A_{m,n+1;\alpha;q+1}^{(k)} & A_{m,n+1;\alpha;q+2}^{(k)} & \cdots & A_{m,n+1;\alpha;2q}^{(k)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{m,n+1;\alpha;q(q-1)+1}^{(k)} & A_{m,n+1;\alpha;q(q-1)+2}^{(k)} & \cdots & A_{m,n+1;\alpha;q^2}^{(k)} \end{bmatrix}$$

and $X_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta} = (A_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta}^{(k)})^t$ where $A_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta}^{(k)}$ is a linear combination of $A_{m,n;\gamma}^{(l)}$. Now, Theorem 2.1.5 can be generalized to the following theorem.

Theorem 2.3.3. *For any $m \geq 2$ and $n \geq 2$, let $S_{m;\alpha,\beta}$ be as given in (2.155) and (2.156). Then $X_{m,n+1;\alpha;\beta} = S_{m;\alpha,\beta} X_{m,n;\beta}$.*



3 Three-dimensional Patterns Generation Problems

3.1 Ordering Matrices and Transition Matrices

This section describes three-dimensional patterns generation problems. Here, $m_1, m_2, m_3 \geq 2$ are fixed and indices are omitted for brevity. Let \mathcal{S} be a set of p colors, and $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ be a fixed finite rectangular sublattice of \mathbf{Z}^3 , where \mathbf{Z}^3 denotes the integer lattice on \mathbb{R}^3 and (m_1, m_2, m_3) a three-tuple of positive integers. Functions $U : \mathbf{Z}^3 \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$ and $U_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3} : \mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$ are called global patterns and local patterns on $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ respectively. The set of all patterns U is denoted by $\Sigma_p^3 \equiv \mathcal{S}^{\mathbf{Z}^3}$, such that Σ_p^3 is the set of all patterns with p different colors in a three-dimensional lattice. For clarity, two symbols, $\mathcal{S} = \{0, 1\}$ are considered. Let x, y and z coordinate represent the 1st-, 2nd- and 3rd-coordinates respectively as Fig. 1.

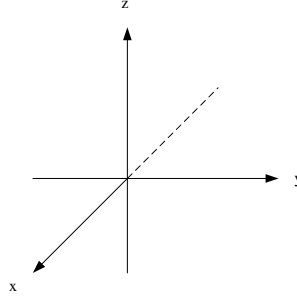


Figure 1: Three-dimensional coordinate system.

Six orderings $[\omega]$ ordering are represented as Eq. (3.1)

$$\begin{aligned}
 [x] &: [1] \succ [2] \succ [3] \\
 [y] &: [2] \succ [1] \succ [3] \\
 [z] &: [3] \succ [1] \succ [2] \\
 [\hat{x}] &: [1] \succ [3] \succ [2] \\
 [\hat{y}] &: [2] \succ [3] \succ [1] \\
 [\hat{z}] &: [3] \succ [2] \succ [1]
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.1}$$

On a fixed finite lattice $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, an ordering $[\omega] : [i] \succ [j] \succ [k]$ is obtained on $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, which is any one of the above orderings on $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$

$$\psi_\omega(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) = m_j m_k (\alpha_i - 1) + m_k (\alpha_j - 1) + \alpha_k,$$

where $1 \leq \alpha_\ell \leq m_\ell$ and $1 \leq \ell \leq 3$. The ordering $[\omega]$ on $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ can now be applied to $\Sigma_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$. Indeed, for each $U = (u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3}^1) \in \Sigma_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, define

$$\begin{aligned}
 \psi_\omega(U) &\equiv \psi_{\omega; m_1, m_2, m_3}(U) \\
 &\equiv 1 + \sum_{\alpha_i=1}^{m_i} \sum_{\alpha_j=1}^{m_j} \sum_{\alpha_k=1}^{m_k} u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \omega_{m_i, m_j, m_k}^{\alpha_i, \alpha_j, \alpha_k},
 \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
 \omega_{m_i, m_j, m_k}^{\alpha_i, \alpha_j, \alpha_k} &= 2^{m_i m_j m_k - \psi_\omega(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3)} \\
 &= 2^{m_k m_j (m_i - \alpha_i) + m_k (m_j - \alpha_j) + (m_k - \alpha_k)}.
 \end{aligned}$$

¹Use $u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3}$ to substitute $u_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3}$ for simplicity afterward.

U is referred to herein as the $\psi_\omega(U)$ -th element in $\Sigma_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ by ordering $[\omega]$. Identifying the pictorial patterns using $\psi_\omega(U)$ is very effective in proving theorems since computations can now be performed on $\psi_\omega(U)$. For instance, the orderings on $\mathbf{Z}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ can be represented as Fig. 2.

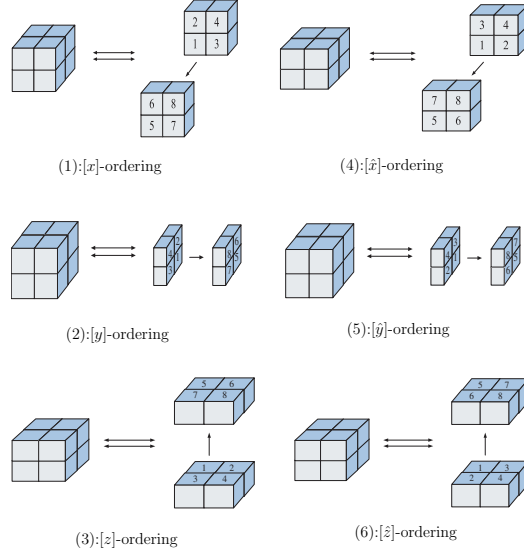


Figure 2: The orderings of $\mathbf{Z}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$.

3.1.1 Ordering matrices

The cube $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ can be decomposed by m_1 -many (m_2 -many and m_3 -many) parallel 2-dimensional rectangles in $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ ($\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times 1 \times m_3}$ and $\mathbf{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times 1}$). Any patterns $U = (u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3}) \in \Sigma_{m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ can be decomposed accordingly. For example, in $[x]$ -ordering, define the α_1 -th layer of rectangle as

$$\mathbf{Z}_{\alpha_1; m_2 \times m_3} = \{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) | 1 \leq \alpha_2 \leq m_2, 1 \leq \alpha_3 \leq m_3\}.$$

Pattern U in α_1 -th layer is assigned the number

$$i_{\alpha_1} \equiv 1 + \sum_{\alpha_2=1}^{m_2} \sum_{\alpha_3=1}^{m_3} u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3} x_{1, m_2, m_3}^{1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3}, \quad (3.2)$$

where $x_{1, m_2, m_3}^{1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3} = 2^{m_2 m_3 - m_3(\alpha_2 - 1) - \alpha_3}$. As denoted by the $1 \times m_2 \times m_3$ pattern

$$x_{1 \times m_2 \times m_3; i_{\alpha_1}} = \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline u_{\alpha_1 1 m_3} & u_{\alpha_1 2 m_3} & \cdots & u_{\alpha_1 m_2 m_3} \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \hline u_{\alpha_1 1 2} & u_{\alpha_1 2 2} & \cdots & u_{\alpha_1 m_2 2} \\ \hline u_{\alpha_1 1 1} & u_{\alpha_1 2 1} & \cdots & u_{\alpha_1 m_2 1} \\ \hline \end{array}.$$

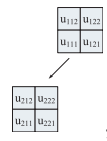
In particular, when $m_2 = 2$ and $m_3 = 2$, as denoted by $x_{1 \times 2 \times 2; i_{\alpha_1}}$, where

$$i_{\alpha_1} = 1 + 2^3 u_{\alpha_1 1 1} + 2^2 u_{\alpha_1 1 2} + 2 u_{\alpha_1 2 1} + u_{\alpha_1 2 2} \quad (3.3)$$

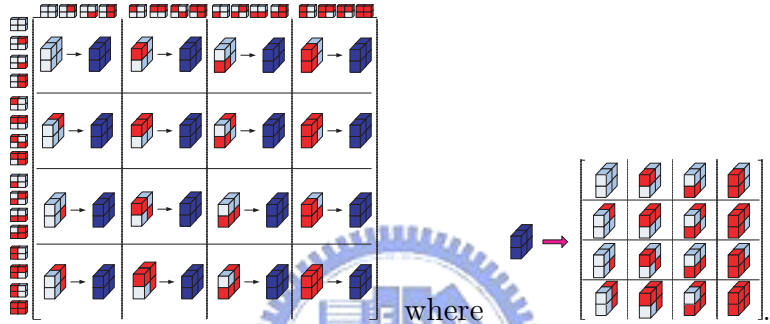
and

$$x_{1 \times 2 \times 2; i_{\alpha_1}} \equiv x_{i_{\alpha_1}} = \begin{array}{|c|c|} \hline u_{\alpha_1 12} & u_{\alpha_1 22} \\ \hline u_{\alpha_1 11} & u_{\alpha_1 21} \\ \hline \end{array},$$

where $\alpha_1 \in \{1, 2\}$. A $2 \times 2 \times 2$ pattern $U = (u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3})$ can now be obtained from the $[x]$ -direct sum of two $1 \times 2 \times 2$ patterns using $[x]$ -ordering:

$$\begin{aligned} x_{2 \times 2 \times 2; i_1 i_2} &\equiv x_{i_1 i_2} \\ &\equiv x_{i_1} \oplus x_{i_2} \\ &= \end{aligned}$$


where i_{α_1} as in Eq. (3.3) and $\alpha_1 \in \{1, 2\}$. Therefore, the complete set of 2^8 patterns in $\Sigma_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ is given by a 16×16 matrix $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} = [x_{i_1 i_2}]^2$ as its entries in



(3.4)

That

$$\psi_x(x_{i_1 i_2}) = 2^4(i_1 - 1) + i_2$$

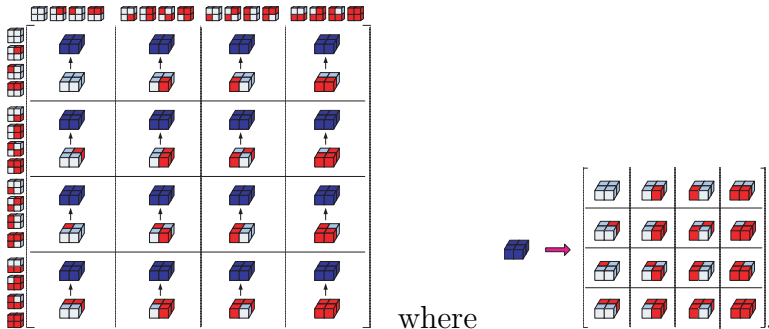
is easily verified, and local patterns in $\Sigma_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ are thus counted by going through each row successively in Eq. (3.4). Correspondingly, $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ can be referred to as an ordering matrix for $\Sigma_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$. A $2 \times 2 \times 2$ pattern can also be regarded as an $[\hat{x}]$ -direct sum of two $1 \times 2 \times 2$ patterns using $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering,

$$\hat{x}_{2 \times 2 \times 2; \hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2} \equiv \hat{x}_{\hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2} \equiv \hat{x}_{\hat{i}_1} \oplus \hat{x}_{\hat{i}_2}$$

where

$$\hat{i}_{\alpha_1} = 1 + 2^3 u_{\alpha_1 11} + 2^2 u_{\alpha_1 21} + 2 u_{\alpha_1 12} + u_{\alpha_1 22}, \quad \alpha_1 \in \{1, 2\}.$$

The ordering matrix $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ can be represented as



where

²Use $x_{i_1 i_2}$ to substitute x_{i_1, i_2} for simplicity afterward.

Now,

$$\psi_{\hat{x}}(\hat{x}_{i_1 i_2}) = 2^4(\hat{i}_1 - 1) + \hat{i}_2$$

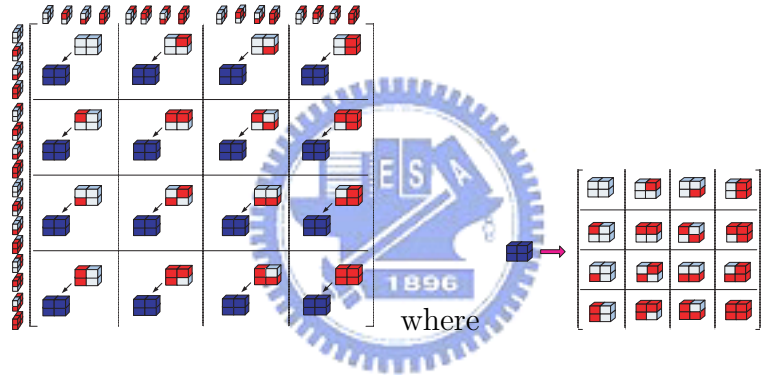
can be verified. Similarly, a $2 \times 2 \times 2$ pattern can also be viewed as a $[y]$ -direct ($[\hat{y}]$ -direct) and $[z]$ -direct ($[\hat{z}]$ -direct) sum of $2 \times 1 \times 2$ and $2 \times 2 \times 1$ patterns:

$$\begin{aligned} y_{j_1 j_2} &\equiv y_{j_1} \oplus y_{j_2}, \\ \hat{y}_{\hat{j}_1 \hat{j}_2} &\equiv \hat{y}_{\hat{j}_1} \oplus \hat{y}_{\hat{j}_2}, \\ z_{k_1 k_2} &\equiv z_{k_1} \oplus z_{k_2}, \\ \hat{z}_{\hat{k}_1 \hat{k}_2} &\equiv \hat{z}_{\hat{k}_1} \oplus \hat{z}_{\hat{k}_2}, \end{aligned}$$

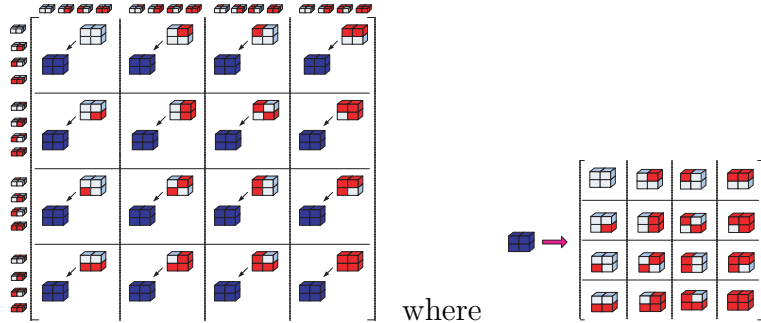
where

$$\begin{aligned} j_{\alpha_2} &= 1 + 2^3 u_{1\alpha_2 1} + 2^2 u_{1\alpha_2 2} + 2u_{2\alpha_2 1} + u_{2\alpha_2 2}, \quad \alpha_2 \in \{1, 2\}, \\ \hat{j}_{\alpha_2} &= 1 + 2^3 u_{1\alpha_2 1} + 2^2 u_{2\alpha_2 1} + 2u_{1\alpha_2 2} + u_{2\alpha_2 2}, \quad \alpha_2 \in \{1, 2\}, \\ k_{\alpha_3} &= 1 + 2^3 u_{11\alpha_3} + 2^2 u_{12\alpha_3} + 2u_{21\alpha_3} + u_{22\alpha_3}, \quad \alpha_3 \in \{1, 2\}, \\ \hat{k}_{\alpha_3} &= 1 + 2^3 u_{11\alpha_3} + 2^2 u_{21\alpha_3} + 2u_{12\alpha_3} + u_{22\alpha_3}, \quad \alpha_3 \in \{1, 2\}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.5)$$

A 16×16 matrix $\mathbb{Y}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} = [y_{j_1 j_2}]$ or $\mathbb{Z}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} = [z_{k_1 k_2}]$ can also be obtained for $\Sigma_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$, such that $\mathbb{Y}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} =$



or $\mathbb{Z}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$



The relationship between $\mathbb{W}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ must be studied, where $\mathbb{W} \in \{\mathbb{X}, \mathbb{Y}, \mathbb{Z}, \hat{\mathbb{X}}, \hat{\mathbb{Y}}, \hat{\mathbb{Z}}\}$. Before the relations are explained, the column matrix and the row matrix are must be given. Let $\mathbb{A} = [a_{ij}]$ be a $m^2 \times m^2$ matrix, the column matrix $\mathbb{A}^{(c)}$ of \mathbb{A} is defined as

$$\mathbb{A}^{(c)} = \begin{bmatrix} A_1^{(c)} & A_2^{(c)} & \cdots & A_m^{(c)} \\ A_{m+1}^{(c)} & A_{m+2}^{(c)} & \cdots & A_{2m}^{(c)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{(m-1)m+1}^{(c)} & A_{(m-1)m+2}^{(c)} & \cdots & A_{m^2}^{(c)} \end{bmatrix},$$

$$A_\alpha^{(c)} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{1\alpha} & a_{2\alpha} & \cdots & a_{m\alpha} \\ a_{(m+1)\alpha} & a_{(m+2)\alpha} & \cdots & a_{(2m)\alpha} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{((m-1)m+1)\alpha} & a_{((m-1)m+2)\alpha} & \cdots & a_{m^2\alpha} \end{bmatrix},$$

where $1 \leq \alpha \leq m^2$.

The row matrix $\mathbb{A}^{(r)}$ of \mathbb{A} is defined as

$$\mathbb{A}^{(r)} = \begin{bmatrix} A_1^{(r)} & A_2^{(r)} & \cdots & A_m^{(r)} \\ A_{m+1}^{(r)} & A_{m+2}^{(r)} & \cdots & A_{2m}^{(r)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{(m-1)m+1}^{(r)} & A_{(m-1)m+2}^{(r)} & \cdots & A_{m^2}^{(r)} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (3.6)$$

$$A_\alpha^{(r)} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{\alpha 1} & a_{\alpha 2} & \cdots & a_{\alpha m} \\ a_{\alpha(m+1)} & a_{\alpha(m+2)} & \cdots & a_{\alpha(2m)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{\alpha((m-1)m+1)} & a_{\alpha((m-1)m+2)} & \cdots & a_{\alpha m^2} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (3.7)$$

where $1 \leq \alpha \leq m^2$. Hence, based on some observations, $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ can be represented in terms of $y_{j_1 j_2}$ as

$$\mathbb{X}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} = \mathbb{Y}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}^{(r)}. \quad (3.8)$$

Furthermore, $\mathbb{Y}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} = \mathbb{X}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}^{(r)}$, $\mathbb{Z}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} = \hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}^{(r)}$, $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} = \mathbb{Z}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}^{(r)}$, $\hat{\mathbb{Y}}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} = \hat{\mathbb{Z}}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}^{(r)}$ and $\hat{\mathbb{Z}}_{2 \times 2 \times 2} = \hat{\mathbb{Y}}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}^{(r)}$ can also be obtained. The remainder of this subsection addresses the construction of $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ from $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ in the following three steps, where $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ represents the ordering matrix of $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ according to $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering generated from $\Sigma_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$.

Step I : Apply $[x]$ -ordering to $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times 2}$ using

2	4	...	2k	...	$2m_2-2$	$2m_2$
1	3	...	$2k-1$	...	$2m_2-3$	$2m_2-1$

\xrightarrow{y}
 y

(3.9)

and introduce ordering matrix $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$.

Step II : Convert $[x]$ -ordering into $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering on $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times 2}$ by

m_2+1	m_2+2	...	m_2+k	...	$2m_2$
1	2	...	k	...	m_2

$\uparrow z$
 z

(3.10)

and introduce ordering matrix $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$.

Step III : Define $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering on $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ by

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ z \end{array} \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|} \hline (m_2-1)m_2+1 & (m_2-1)m_2+2 & \dots & m_2m_2-1 & m_2m_2 \\ \hline \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \hline m_2+1 & m_2+2 & \dots & 2m_2-1 & 2m_2 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & \dots & m_2-1 & m_2 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad (3.11)$$

and introduce ordering matrix $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$.

To introduce $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$, define

$$\begin{aligned} y_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}} &\equiv y_{2 \times 2 \times 2; j_1 j_2} \hat{\oplus} y_{2 \times 2 \times 2; j_2 j_3} \hat{\oplus} \dots \hat{\oplus} y_{2 \times 2 \times 2; j_{m_2-1} j_{m_2}} \\ &\equiv y_{j_1} \oplus y_{j_2} \oplus \dots \oplus y_{j_{m_2}}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.12)$$

where $1 \leq j_k \leq 2^4$ and $1 \leq k \leq m_2$. Herein, a wedge direct sum $\hat{\oplus}$ is applied to $2 \times 2 \times 2$ patterns whenever they can be attached to each other.

Now, $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be obtained as follows.

Theorem 3.1.1. For any $m_2 \geq 2$, $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} = \{y_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}\}$, where $y_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}$ is given in Eq. (3.12). Furthermore, the ordering matrix $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} = [y_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}]$ which is a $2^{2m_2} \times 2^{2m_2}$ matrix can be decomposed into following matrices

$$\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} = [X_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1}]_{2^2 \times 2^2},$$

where $1 \leq j_1 \leq 2^4$. For fixed $j_1, j_2, \dots, j_k \in \{1, 2, \dots, 2^4\}$,

$$X_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_k} = [X_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_k j_{k+1}}]_{2^2 \times 2^2},$$

where $1 \leq j_{k+1} \leq 2^4$ and $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, m_2 - 2\}$. For fixed $j_1, j_2, \dots, j_{m_2-1}$,

$$X_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2-1}} = [y_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2-1} j_{m_2}}]_{2^2 \times 2^2},$$

where $y_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}$ is defined as in Eq. (3.12).

Proof. From Eq. (3.5), $u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3}$ can be solved in terms of j_{α_2} , yielding

$$u_{1\alpha_2 1} = \left[\frac{j_{\alpha_2} - 1}{2^3} \right], \quad (3.13)$$

$$u_{1\alpha_2 2} = \left[\frac{j_{\alpha_2} - 1 - 2^3 u_{1\alpha_2 1}}{2^2} \right], \quad (3.14)$$

$$u_{2\alpha_2 1} = \left[\frac{j_{\alpha_2} - 1 - 2^3 u_{1\alpha_2 1} - 2^2 u_{1\alpha_2 2}}{2} \right], \quad (3.15)$$

$$u_{2\alpha_2 2} = j_{\alpha_2} - 1 - 2^3 u_{1\alpha_2 1} - 2^2 u_{1\alpha_2 2} - 2 u_{2\alpha_2 1}, \quad (3.16)$$

where $[]$ is the Gauss symbol. Equations (3.13)-(3.16), yield the following table.

j_{α_2}	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
$u_{1\alpha_2 1}$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
$u_{1\alpha_2 2}$	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
$u_{2\alpha_2 1}$	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1
$u_{2\alpha_2 2}$	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1

For any $m_2 \geq 2$, we have

$$i_{m_2;1} = 1 + \sum_{\alpha_2=1}^{m_2} (2^{2(m_2-\alpha_2)+1} u_{1\alpha_2 1} + 2^{2(m_2-\alpha_2)} u_{1\alpha_2 2}),$$

$$i_{m_2;2} = 1 + \sum_{\alpha_2=1}^{m_2} (2^{2(m_2-\alpha_2)+1} u_{2\alpha_2 1} + 2^{2(m_2-\alpha_2)} u_{2\alpha_2 2}).$$

From the above formulae,

$$i_{m_2+1;1} = 2^2(i_{m_2;1} - 1) + 2u_{1(m_2+1)1} + u_{1(m_2+1)2} + 1,$$

$$i_{m_2+1;2} = 2^2(i_{m_2;2} - 1) + 2u_{2(m_2+1)1} + u_{2(m_2+1)2} + 1.$$

Now, by induction on m_2 the theorem follows from the last two formulae and the above table. The proof is complete. \square

Remark 3.1.2. *By the same method, the following relations can be derived. The details of the proof are omitted here for brevity.*

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{X}_{2 \times 2 \times m_3} &= [z_{2 \times 2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_{m_3-1} k_{m_3}}]_{2^{2m_3} \times 2^{2m_3}} \\ \hat{Y}_{m_1 \times 2 \times 2} &= [x_{m_1 \times 2 \times 2; i_1 i_2 \dots i_{m_1-1} i_{m_1}}]_{2^{2m_1} \times 2^{2m_1}} \\ \hat{Y}_{2 \times 2 \times m_3} &= [\hat{z}_{2 \times 2 \times m_3; \hat{k}_1 \hat{k}_2 \dots \hat{k}_{m_3-1} \hat{k}_{m_3}}]_{2^{2m_3} \times 2^{2m_3}} \\ \hat{Z}_{m_1 \times 2 \times 2} &= [\hat{x}_{m_1 \times 2 \times 2; \hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2 \dots \hat{i}_{m_1-1} \hat{i}_{m_1}}]_{2^{2m_1} \times 2^{2m_1}} \\ \hat{Z}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} &= [\hat{y}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; \hat{j}_1 \hat{j}_2 \dots \hat{j}_{m_2-1} \hat{j}_{m_2}}]_{2^{2m_2} \times 2^{2m_2}} \end{aligned}$$

Next, $[x]$ -ordering is converted into $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering for $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times 2}$. Since $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times 2} = \{(1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) : 1 \leq \alpha_2 \leq m_2, 1 \leq \alpha_3 \leq 2\}$, the position (α_2, α_3) is the α -th in Eq. (3.9), where

$$\alpha = 2(\alpha_2 - 1) + \alpha_3. \quad (3.17)$$

In Eq. (3.10), the position of $(1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3)$ is the $\hat{\alpha}$ -th, where

$$\hat{\alpha} = m_2(\alpha_3 - 1) + \alpha_2.$$

The relation

$$\hat{\alpha} = m_2\alpha + (1 - 2m_2)\left[\frac{\alpha - 1}{2}\right] + (1 - m_2),$$

or

$$\hat{\alpha} = k \quad \text{if } \alpha = 2k - 1,$$

and

$$\hat{\alpha} = m_2 + k \quad \text{if } \alpha = 2k,$$

$1 \leq k \leq m_2$ is easily verified.

Now, the ordering $[\hat{x}]$ in Eq. (3.10) on $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be extended to $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ by Eq. (3.11). For a fixed m_2 , $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering on $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ is clearly one-dimensional; it grows in the z-direction. Given ordering Eq. (3.11) on $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, for $U = (u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3}) \in \Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, denoted by

$$\hat{i}_{\alpha_1} = 1 + \sum_{\alpha_2=1}^{m_2} \sum_{\alpha_3=1}^{m_3} u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3} 2^{m_2(m_3 - \alpha_3) + (m_2 - \alpha_2)},$$

where $\alpha_1 = 1, 2$,

$$\psi_{\hat{x}}(U) = 2^{m_2 m_3} (\hat{i}_1 - 1) + \hat{i}_2.$$

Now, let $\hat{x}_{\hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2} = U = (u_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3})$, yielding the new ordering matrix $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} = [\hat{x}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; \hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2}]$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$. The relationship between $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ and $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ is established before $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ is constructed from $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ for $m_3 \geq 3$.

A conversion sequence of orderings can be obtained from Eqs. (3.9)-(3.10). Where P_k represents the permutation of $\mathbb{N}_{2m} = \{1, 2, \dots, 2m\}$ such that $P_k(k+1) = k$, $P_k(k) = k+1$ and the other numbers are fixed. P_k is also the permutation on $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times 2}$ such that it exchanges k and $k+1$ while keeping the other positions fixed, i.e.,

$$\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|} \hline \cdot & k+1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \hline \cdot & \cdot & k & \cdot & \cdot \\ \hline \end{array} \xrightarrow{P_k} \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|} \hline \cdot & k & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \hline \cdot & \cdot & k+1 & \cdot & \cdot \\ \hline \end{array}.$$

Clearly, equation (3.9) can be converted into Eq. (3.10) in many ways using the sequence of P_k . A systematic approach is proposed here.

Lemma 3.1.3. For $m_2 \geq 2$, equation (3.9) can be converted into Eq. (3.10) using the following sequences of $\frac{m_2(m_2-1)}{2}$ permutations successively

$$\begin{aligned} & (P_2 P_4 \cdots P_{2m_2-2})(P_3 P_5 \cdots P_{2m_2-3}) \cdots \\ & (P_k P_{k+2} \cdots P_{2m_2-k}) \cdots (P_{m_2-1} P_{m_2+1}) P_{m_2}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.18)$$

$2 \leq k \leq m_2$.

Proof. When $m_2 = 2$ and 3, verifying that Eq. (3.18) can convert Eq. (3.9) into Eq. (3.10) is relatively simple.

When $m_2 \geq 4$, and for any $2 \leq k \leq m_2$, applying

$$(P_2 P_4 \cdots P_{2m_2-2})(P_3 P_5 \cdots P_{2m_2-3}) \cdots (P_k P_{k+2} \cdots P_{2m_2-k})$$

to Eq. (3.9), yields two intermediate cases:

(i) when $2 \leq k \leq \lfloor \frac{m_2}{2} \rfloor$,

$$\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+1 & k+3 & \cdots & 3k-1 & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & 3k-1+2\ell & \cdots & 2m_2-k-1 & 2m_2-k+1 & \cdots & 2m_2-1 & 2m_2 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & \cdots & k & k+2 & k+4 & \cdots & k+2\ell & \cdots & \cdots & 2m_2-3k+1 & \cdots & 2m_2-k-2 & 2m_2-k \\ \hline \end{array}, \quad (3.19)$$

where $0 \leq \ell \leq m_2 - 2k$.

(ii) when $\lfloor \frac{m_2}{2} \rfloor + 1 \leq k \leq m_2 - 1$,

$$\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+1 & \cdots & 2m_2-k & m_2-k+2 & m_2-k+2 & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & 2m_2-1 & 2m_2 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & k-1 & k & k+2 & \cdots & 2m_2-k \\ \hline \end{array} \quad (3.20)$$

When $k = m_2$ in Eq. (3.20), equation (3.10) holds. Equation (3.19) and Eq. (3.20) are established by mathematical induction on k . When $k=2$, verifying that Eq. (3.9) is converted into

3	5	...	...	...	$2m_2 - 3$	$2m_2 - 1$	$2m_2$
1	2	4	...	...	...	$2m_2 - 2$	$2m_2 - 2$

by $P_2P_4 \cdots P_{2m_2-2}$ is relatively easy such that Eq. (3.19) holds for $k=2$. Next, assume that Eq. (3.19) holds for $k \leq \lfloor \frac{m_2}{2} \rfloor$. Then, by applying $P_{k+1}P_{k+3} \cdots P_{2m_2-k-1}$ to Eq. (3.19), equation (3.19) can be verified to hold for $k+1$ when $k+1 \leq \lfloor \frac{m_2}{2} \rfloor$ or becomes Eq. (3.20) when $k+1 \geq \lfloor \frac{m_2}{2} \rfloor$. When $k \geq \lfloor \frac{m_2}{2} \rfloor + 1$, $P_{k+1}P_{k+3} \cdots P_{2m_2-k-1}$ is applied to Eq. (3.20). Equation (3.20) can also be confirmed to hold for $k+1$. Finally, equation (3.10) is concluded to hold for $k = m_2$. The proof is thus complete. \square

Based on Lemma 3.1.3, $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be converted into $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ as follows. Let

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (3.21)$$

and for $2 \leq j \leq 2m_2 - 2$, as denoted by

$$P_{2m_2;j} = I_{2^{j-1}} \otimes P \otimes I_{2^{2m_2-j-1}},$$

where I_k is the $k \times k$ identity matrix. Moreover, let

$$\mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} = (P_{2m_2;2} P_{2m_2;4} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-2}) \cdots (P_{2m_2;k} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-k}) \cdots (P_{2m_2;m_2}), \quad (3.22)$$

$2 \leq k \leq m_2$. Then, the following theorem holds.

Theorem 3.1.4. For any $m_2 \geq 2$,

$$\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} = \mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2}^t \mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} \mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2}. \quad (3.23)$$

Proof. From Eq. (3.17), in $\mathbf{Z}_{1 \times m_2 \times 2}$ the position (α_2, α_3) is the α -th in Eq. (3.9), where $\alpha = 2(\alpha_2 - 1) + \alpha_3$. Define

$$\ell_\alpha \equiv 1 + 2u_{1\alpha_2\alpha_3} + u_{2\alpha_2\alpha_3},$$

$1 \leq \ell_\alpha \leq 4$ and $1 \leq \alpha \leq 2m_2$. For $U = (u_{\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3}) \in \Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$, from Theorem 3.1.1 it can be denoted by $y_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \cdots j_{m_2}}$ and by Eq. (3.5) for fixed $1 \leq \alpha_2 \leq m_2$:

$$j_{\alpha_2} = 1 + 2^3 u_{1\alpha_2 1} + 2^2 u_{1\alpha_2 2} + 2u_{2\alpha_2 1} + u_{2\alpha_2 2},$$

where $1 \leq j_{\alpha_2} \leq 16$. Accordingly, $y_{j_{\alpha_2}}$ can be represented by $y_{\ell_{2\alpha_2-1} \ell_{2\alpha_2}}$ and the relation is

$$\begin{bmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & y_4 \\ y_5 & y_6 & y_7 & y_8 \\ y_9 & y_{10} & y_{11} & y_{12} \\ y_{13} & y_{14} & y_{15} & y_{16} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & y_{21} & y_{22} \\ y_{13} & y_{14} & y_{23} & y_{24} \\ y_{31} & y_{32} & y_{41} & y_{42} \\ y_{33} & y_{34} & y_{43} & y_{44} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Therefore, from Eq. (3.12) patterns in ordering matrix $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be specified by

$$\begin{aligned} y_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}} &= y_{j_1} \oplus y_{j_2} \oplus \dots \oplus y_{j_{m_2}} \\ &= y_{\ell_1 \ell_2} \oplus y_{\ell_3 \ell_4} \oplus \dots \oplus y_{\ell_{2m_2-1} \ell_{2m_2}} \\ &\equiv y_{\ell_1 \ell_2 \dots \ell_{2m_2}}. \end{aligned}$$

For any $1 \leq k \leq 2m_2 - 1$,

$$\begin{aligned} P_{2m_2; k}^t \mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} P_{2m_2; k} &= P_{2m_2; k}^t [y_{\ell_1 \ell_2 \dots \ell_k \ell_{k+1} \dots \ell_{2m_2}}] P_{2m_2; k} \\ &= [y_{\ell_1 \ell_2 \dots \ell_{k+1} \ell_k \dots \ell_{2m_2}}] \end{aligned}$$

is easily verified, such that $P_{2m_2; k}$ exchanges ℓ_k and ℓ_{k+1} in $\mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$. Therefore, Eq. (3.23) follows from Eq. (3.22) and Lemma 3.1.3. \square

Now, according to Theorem 3.1.4,

$$\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} = [\hat{x}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; \hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2}],$$

$1 \leq \hat{i}_1, \hat{i}_2 \leq 2m_2$. From some observations as Eq. (3.8), $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be represented as $z_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_1 k_2}$, where $1 \leq k_1, k_2 \leq 2^{2m_2}$. The $[\hat{x}]$ -expression

$$\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2} = \mathbb{Z}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}^{(r)} \quad (3.24)$$

for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ enables $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ to be constructed for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$. Indeed, for fixed $m_2 \geq 2$ and $m_3 \geq 2$, let

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{x}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2} &\equiv z_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_{m_3}} \\ &\equiv z_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_1 k_2} \hat{\oplus} z_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_2 k_3} \hat{\oplus} \dots \hat{\oplus} z_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_{m_3-1} k_{m_3}}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.25)$$

Therefore, by a similar argument as was used to establish Theorem 3.1.1 the following theorem holds for $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, the detailed proofs are omitted for brevity.

Theorem 3.1.5. *For fixed $m_2 \geq 2$ and for any $m_3 \geq 2$, the ordering matrix $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ with respect to $[\hat{x}]$ -ordering can be expressed as*

$$\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3} = [\hat{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}},$$

where $1 \leq k_1 \leq 2^{2m_2}$. For fixed $1 \leq k_1, k_2, \dots, k_l \leq 2^{2m_2}$,

$$\hat{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_l} = [\hat{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_l k_{l+1}}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}}$$

where $1 \leq k_{l+1} \leq 2^{2m_2}$ and $1 \leq l \leq m_3 - 2$. For fixed $k_1, k_2, \dots, k_{m_3-1}$,

$$\hat{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_{m_3-1}} = [z_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_{m_3}}],$$

where $z_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_{m_3}}$ is given by Eq. (3.25).

Remark 3.1.6. *Similarly, according to other orderings, the following relations can be derived*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{X}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3} &= [y_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}]_{2^{m_2 m_3} \times 2^{m_2 m_3}} \\ \hat{\mathbb{Y}}_{m_1 \times 2 \times m_3} &= [\hat{z}_{m_1 \times 2 \times m_3; \hat{k}_1 \hat{k}_2 \dots \hat{k}_{m_3}}]_{2^{m_1 m_3} \times 2^{m_1 m_3}} \\ \mathbb{Y}_{m_1 \times 2 \times m_3} &= [x_{m_1 \times 2 \times m_3; i_1 i_2 \dots i_{m_1}}]_{2^{m_1 m_3} \times 2^{m_1 m_3}} \\ \hat{\mathbb{Z}}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times 2} &= [\hat{y}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times 2; \hat{j}_1 \hat{j}_2 \dots \hat{j}_{m_2}}]_{2^{m_1 m_2} \times 2^{m_1 m_2}} \\ \mathbb{Z}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times 2} &= [\hat{x}_{m_1 \times m_2 \times 2; \hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2 \dots \hat{i}_{m_1}}]_{2^{m_1 m_2} \times 2^{m_1 m_2}}. \end{aligned}$$

3.1.2 Transition matrices

Based on the definitions of the ordering matrices $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ for $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ having been defined, high order transition matrices $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ can now be derived from $\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}$. As in the two-dimensional case [4], a basic set $\mathcal{B} \subset \Sigma_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ is assumed to give. Define the transition matrix $\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2} = \mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}(\mathcal{B})$ by

$$\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2} = [a_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2; i_1 i_2}]_{2^4 \times 2^4}, \quad (3.26)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} a_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2; i_1 i_2} &= 1 && \text{if } x_{i_1 i_2} \in \mathcal{B}, \\ &= 0 && \text{otherwise.} \end{aligned} \quad (3.27)$$

Then, the transition matrix $\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ is a $2^{2m_2} \times 2^{2m_2}$ matrix with entries $a_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1 i_2}$ ³, where

$$\begin{aligned} a_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1 i_2} &= a_{y; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}} \\ &= \prod_{k=1}^{m_2-1} a_{y; 2 \times 2 \times 2; j_k j_{k+1}}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.28)$$

Before $\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ is introduced, three products of the matrices are defined as follows.

Definition 3.1.7. For any two matrices $\mathbb{M} = (M_{ij})$ and $\mathbb{N} = (N_{kl})$, the Kronecker product (tensor product) $\mathbb{M} \otimes \mathbb{N}$ of \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{N} is defined by

$$\mathbb{M} \otimes \mathbb{N} = (M_{ij} \mathbb{N}).$$

For any $n \geq 1$,

$$\otimes \mathbb{N}^n = \mathbb{N} \otimes \mathbb{N} \otimes \dots \otimes \mathbb{N},$$

n -times in \mathbb{N} .

Next, for any two $m \times m$ matrices

$$\mathbb{P} = (P_{ij}) \text{ and } \mathbb{Q} = (Q_{ij})$$

where P_{ij} and Q_{ij} are numbers or matrices, the Hadamard product $\mathbb{P} \circ \mathbb{Q}$ is defined by

$$\mathbb{P} \circ \mathbb{Q} = (P_{ij} \cdot Q_{ij}),$$

where the product $P_{ij} \cdot Q_{ij}$ of P_{ij} and Q_{ij} may be a multiplication of numbers, of numbers and matrices or of matrices whenever it is well-defined.

Finally, product $\hat{\otimes}$ is defined as follows. For any 4×4 matrix

$$\mathbb{M}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & m_{21} & m_{22} \\ m_{13} & m_{14} & m_{23} & m_{24} \\ m_{31} & m_{32} & m_{41} & m_{42} \\ m_{33} & m_{34} & m_{43} & m_{44} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M_{2;1} & M_{2;2} \\ M_{2;3} & M_{2;4} \end{bmatrix}$$

and any 2×2 matrix

$$\mathbb{N} = \begin{bmatrix} N_1 & N_2 \\ N_3 & N_4 \end{bmatrix},$$

³Use $a_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2; i_1 i_2}$ to substitute $a_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2; i_1, i_2}$ for simplicity afterward.

where m_{ij} are numbers and N_k are numbers or matrices, for $1 \leq i, j, k \leq 4$, define

$$\mathbb{M}_2 \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{N} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11}N_1 & m_{12}N_2 & m_{21}N_1 & m_{22}N_2 \\ m_{13}N_3 & m_{14}N_4 & m_{23}N_3 & m_{24}N_4 \\ m_{31}N_1 & m_{32}N_2 & m_{41}N_1 & m_{42}N_2 \\ m_{33}N_3 & m_{34}N_4 & m_{43}N_3 & m_{44}N_4 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Furthermore, for $n \geq 1$, the $n + 1$ -th order of transition matrix of \mathbb{M}_2 is defined by

$$\mathbb{M}_{n+1} \equiv \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^n = \mathbb{M}_2 \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2 \hat{\otimes} \cdots \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2,$$

n -times in \mathbb{M}_2 . More precisely,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{M}_{n+1} &= \mathbb{M}_2 \hat{\otimes} (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) = \begin{bmatrix} M_{2;1} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) & M_{2;2} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) \\ M_{2;3} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) & M_{2;4} \circ (\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1}) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} m_{11}M_{n;1} & m_{12}M_{n;2} & m_{21}M_{n;1} & m_{22}M_{n;2} \\ m_{13}M_{n;3} & m_{14}M_{n;4} & m_{23}M_{n;3} & m_{24}M_{n;4} \\ m_{31}M_{n;1} & m_{32}M_{n;2} & m_{41}M_{n;1} & m_{42}M_{n;2} \\ m_{33}M_{n;3} & m_{34}M_{n;4} & m_{43}M_{n;3} & m_{44}M_{n;4} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M_{n+1;1} & M_{n+1;2} \\ M_{n+1;3} & M_{n+1;4} \end{bmatrix}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\mathbb{M}_n = \hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^{n-1} = \begin{bmatrix} M_{n;1} & M_{n;2} \\ M_{n;3} & M_{n;4} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Here, the following convention is adopted,

$$\hat{\otimes} \mathbb{M}_2^0 = \mathbb{E}_2.$$

where \mathbb{E}_2 is the 2×2 matrix with 1 as its entries.

Theorem 3.1.1, yields results for $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ as \mathbb{T}_n in Theorem 3.1 in [4]. Indeed,

Theorem 3.1.8. Let $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}$ be a transition matrix that is given by Eq. (3.26) and Eq. (3.27). Then, for high order transition matrices $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2}$, $m_2 \geq 3$, the following three equivalent statements hold:

(I) $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be decomposed into m_2 successive 4×4 matrices

$$\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} = [A_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1}]_{4 \times 4},$$

where $1 \leq j_1 \leq 16$. For fixed $1 \leq j_1, j_2, \dots, j_k \leq 16$,

$$A_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_k} = [A_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_k j_{k+1}}]_{4 \times 4},$$

where $1 \leq j_{k+1} \leq 16$ and $1 \leq k \leq m_2 - 1$. For fixed $j_1, j_2, \dots, j_{m_2-1} \in \{1, 2, \dots, 16\}$,

$$A_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2-1}} = [a_{y;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}]_{4 \times 4},$$

where $a_{y;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}$ is defined in Eq. (3.28).

(II) Starting from

$$\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2} = [A_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2; j_1}]_{4 \times 4}$$

and

$$A_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2; j_1} = [a_{y;2 \times 2 \times 2; j_1 j_2}]_{4 \times 4},$$

for $m_2 \geq 3$, $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be obtained from $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2}$ by replacing $A_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2; j_1}$ with

$$(A_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2; j_1})_{4 \times 4} \circ (\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2})_{4 \times 4}.$$

(III) For $m_2 \geq 3$,

$$\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} = (\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2})_{2^{2(m_2-1)} \times 2^{2(m_2-1)}} \circ (E_{2^{2(m_2-2)}} \otimes \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}), \quad (3.29)$$

where E_{2^k} is the $2^k \times 2^k$ matrix with 1 as its entries.

Proof. (I) The proof involves simply replacing $X_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_k}$ and $y_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}$ by $A_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_k}$ and $a_{y;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}$ in Theorem 3.1.1, respectively.

(II) follows directly from (I).

(III) follows from (I); $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} = [A_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1}]$, $1 \leq j_1 \leq 2^4$. (I) yields the following formula;

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} &= [a_{y;2 \times 2 \times 2; j_1 j_2} A_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2; j_2}] \\ &= (\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2})_{2^{2(m_2-1)} \times 2^{2(m_2-1)}} \hat{\otimes} [E_{2^{2(m_2-2)}} \otimes \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}]. \end{aligned}$$

The proof is complete. □

Remark 3.1.9. As stated in Remark 3.1.2, the following formulae apply

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times 2 \times m_3} &= [a_{z;2 \times 2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_{m_3-1} k_{m_3}}]_{2^{2m_3} \times 2^{2m_3}} \\ \mathbb{A}_{y; m_1 \times 2 \times 2} &= [a_{x; m_1 \times 2 \times 2; i_1 i_2 \dots i_{m_1-1} i_{m_1}}]_{2^{2m_1} \times 2^{2m_1}} \\ \mathbb{A}_{\hat{y}; 2 \times 2 \times m_3} &= [a_{\hat{z}; 2 \times 2 \times m_3; \hat{k}_1 \hat{k}_2 \dots \hat{k}_{m_3-1} \hat{k}_{m_3}}]_{2^{2m_3} \times 2^{2m_3}} \\ \mathbb{A}_{z; m_1 \times 2 \times 2} &= [a_{\hat{x}; m_1 \times 2 \times 2; \hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2 \dots \hat{i}_{m_1-1} \hat{i}_{m_1}}]_{2^{2m_1} \times 2^{2m_1}} \\ \mathbb{A}_{\hat{z}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2} &= [a_{\hat{y}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; \hat{j}_1 \hat{j}_2 \dots \hat{j}_{m_2-1} \hat{j}_{m_2}}]_{2^{2m_2} \times 2^{2m_2}}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, the transition matrix $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2}$, with respect to the ordering matrix $\hat{\mathbb{X}}_{2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ can be obtained. Additionally, by using Theorem 3.1.4 yields

Theorem 3.1.10.

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2} = \mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2}^t \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} \mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2}.$$

Proof. The proof involves simply replacing $y_{2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}$ by $a_{y;2 \times m_2 \times 2; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}$ in Theorem 3.1.4. □

Theorem 3.1.5 yields transition matrix $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ from $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2}$. Equation (3.24) yields the transition matrix

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2} = [A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_1}] \quad (3.30)$$

and

$$A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_1} = [a_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_1 k_2}]. \quad (3.31)$$

Therefore,

Theorem 3.1.11. Let $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ be a transition matrix given by Eq. (3.30) and Eq. (3.31). Then, for high order transition matrices $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, $m_2 \geq 3$, we have the following three equivalent statements hold,

(I) $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ can be decomposed into m_3 successive $2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}$ matrices:

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3} = [A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}},$$

where $1 \leq k_1 \leq 2^{2m_2}$. For fixed $1 \leq k_1, k_2, \dots, k_\ell \leq 2^{2m_2}$,

$$A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_\ell} = [A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_\ell k_{\ell+1}}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}},$$

where $1 \leq k_{\ell+1} \leq 2^{2m_2}$ and $1 \leq \ell \leq m_3 - 2$,

$$A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_{m_3-1}} = [a_{z;2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_{m_3}}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}},$$

where $1 \leq k_{m_3} \leq 2^{2m_2}$ and by Eq. (3.25)

$$a_{z;2 \times m_2 \times m_3; k_1 k_2 \dots k_{m_3}} = \prod_{\ell=1}^{m_3-1} a_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_\ell k_{\ell+1}}.$$

(II) For any $m_3 \geq 3$, $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ can be obtained from $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3-1)}$ by replacing $A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_1}$ with

$$(A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2; k_1})_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}} \circ (\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2})_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}}.$$

(III) Furthermore, for $m_3 \geq 3$,

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3} = (\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3-1)})_{2^{m_2(m_3-1)} \times 2^{m_2(m_3-1)}} \circ (E_{2^{m_2(m_3-2)}} \otimes \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2}). \quad (3.32)$$

The proof closely resembles that of Theorem 3.1.1 and Theorem 3.1.8. Details of the proof can be omitted since obvious and repeated.

Remark 3.1.12. As in Remark 3.1.6, the following formulae are obtained

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times m_3} &= [a_{y;2 \times m_2 \times m_3; j_1 j_2 \dots j_{m_2}}]_{2^{m_2 m_3} \times 2^{m_2 m_3}} \\ \mathbb{A}_{\hat{y};m_1 \times 2 \times m_3} &= [a_{\hat{z};m_1 \times 2 \times m_3; \hat{k}_1 \hat{k}_2 \dots \hat{k}_{m_3}}]_{2^{m_1 m_3} \times 2^{m_1 m_3}} \\ \mathbb{A}_{y;m_1 \times 2 \times m_3} &= [a_{x;m_1 \times 2 \times m_3; i_1 i_2 \dots i_{m_1}}]_{2^{m_1 m_3} \times 2^{m_1 m_3}} \\ \mathbb{A}_{\hat{z};m_1 \times m_2 \times 2} &= [a_{\hat{y};m_1 \times m_2 \times 2; \hat{j}_1 \hat{j}_2 \dots \hat{j}_{m_2}}]_{2^{m_1 m_2} \times 2^{m_1 m_2}} \\ \mathbb{A}_{z;m_1 \times m_2 \times 2} &= [a_{\hat{x};m_1 \times m_2 \times 2; \hat{i}_1 \hat{i}_2 \dots \hat{i}_{m_1}}]_{2^{m_1 m_2} \times 2^{m_1 m_2}}. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, the spatial entropy $h(\mathcal{B})$ can be computed from the maximum eigenvalue $\lambda_{\hat{x};2, m_2, m_3}$ of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$. Indeed,

Theorem 3.1.13. Let $\lambda_{\hat{x};2, m_2, m_3}$ be the maximum eigenvalue of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, then

$$h(\mathcal{B}) = \lim_{m_2, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \lambda_{\hat{x};2, m_2, m_3}}{m_2 m_3}. \quad (3.33)$$

Proof. By the same arguments as in [17], the limit Eq. (1.36) is well-defined and exists. From $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, for $m_2 \geq 2$ and $m_3 \geq 2$,

$$\begin{aligned}\Gamma_{\hat{x};m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}(\mathcal{B}) &= \sum_{1 \leq i, j \leq 2^{m_2 m_3}} (\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1-1})_{ij} \\ &= |(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1-1})|.\end{aligned}$$

As in the one-dimensional case,

$$\lim_{m_1 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log |(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1-1})|}{m_1} = \log \lambda_{\hat{x};2, m_2, m_3},$$

as in for example [4]. Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}h(\mathcal{B}) &= \lim_{m_1, m_2, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \Gamma_{\hat{x};m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}(\mathcal{B})}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \\ &= \lim_{m_2, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_2 m_3} \left(\lim_{m_1 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \Gamma_{\hat{x};m_1 \times m_2 \times m_3}(\mathcal{B})}{m_1} \right) \\ &= \lim_{m_2, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \lambda_{\hat{x};2, m_2, m_3}}{m_2 m_3}.\end{aligned}$$

The proof is complete. □

Remark 3.1.14. Let $\lambda_{x;2, m_2, m_3}$, $\lambda_{\hat{y};m_1, 2, m_3}$, $\lambda_{y; m_1, 2, m_3}$, $\lambda_{\hat{z};m_1, m_2, 2}$ and $\lambda_{z; m_1, m_2, 2}$ be the maximum eigenvalue of $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{y};m_1 \times 2 \times m_3}$, $\mathbb{A}_{y; m_1 \times 2 \times m_3}$, $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{z};m_1 \times m_2 \times 2}$ and $\mathbb{A}_{z; m_1 \times m_2 \times 2}$ respectively. Then,

$$\begin{aligned}h(\mathcal{B}) &= \lim_{m_2, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \lambda_{x;2, m_2, m_3}}{m_2 m_3} \\ &= \lim_{m_1, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \lambda_{\hat{y};m_1, 2, m_3}}{m_1 m_3} \\ &= \lim_{m_1, m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \lambda_{y; m_1, 2, m_3}}{m_1 m_3} \\ &= \lim_{m_1, m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \lambda_{\hat{z};m_1, m_2, 2}}{m_1 m_2} \\ &= \lim_{m_1, m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \lambda_{z; m_1, m_2, 2}}{m_1 m_2}.\end{aligned}$$

The detailed proofs are as above.

3.1.3 Computation of $\lambda_{m,n}$ and entropies

The last subsection provided a systematic means of writing down $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ from $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}$. As in a two-dimensional case [4], a recursive formula for $\lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3}$ can be obtained in a special structure. An illustrative example is presented in which $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ and $\lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3}$ can be derived explicitly to demonstrate the methods developed in the preceding subsection. More complete results will be presented later.

Let

$$G = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } E = E_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (3.34)$$

and

$$\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2} = G \otimes E \otimes E \otimes E. \quad (3.35)$$

Proposition 3.1.15. *Substitute $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}$ into Eq. (3.34) and Eq. (3.35). Then,*

$$(i) \quad \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} = \otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-1} \otimes (\otimes E^2), \quad (3.36)$$

$$(ii) \quad \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2} = (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2+1}), \quad (3.37)$$

$$(iii) \quad \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3} = \otimes((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3-1} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2}). \quad (3.38)$$

Furthermore, for the maximum eigenvalue $\lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3}$ of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$, the following recursive formulae apply:

$$\lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2+1,m_3} = 2g^{m_3-1} \lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3} \quad (3.39)$$

and

$$\lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3+1} = 2g^{m_2-1} \lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3} \quad (3.40)$$

for $m_2, m_3 \geq 2$ with

$$\lambda_{\hat{x};2,2,2} = 2^3 g. \quad (3.41)$$

The spatial entropy is

$$h(\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}) = \log g, \quad (3.42)$$

where $g = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$, the golden-mean.

Proof. The proof is described only briefly, and the details are omitted for brevity.

(i) can be proven by Theorem 3.1.8 and induction on m_2 . Indeed, by Eq. (3.29),

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 3 \times 2} &= (\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2})_{4 \times 4} \circ (E_{2^2} \otimes \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2})_{4 \times 4} \\ &= (G \otimes E \otimes E \otimes E)_{4 \times 4} \circ (E \otimes E \otimes (G \otimes E \otimes E \otimes E))_{4 \times 4} \\ &= (G \circ E) \otimes (E \circ E) \otimes (E \circ G) \otimes (E_{2 \times 2} \circ (E \otimes E \otimes E))_{2 \times 2} \\ &= G \otimes E \otimes G \otimes E \otimes E \otimes E. \end{aligned}$$

Assume that $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2} = \otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-2} \otimes (\otimes E^2)$. Then by Eq. (3.29) again,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} &= (\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2}) \circ ((\otimes E^{2(m_2-2)}) \otimes \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}) \\
&= (\otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-2} \otimes (\otimes E^2))_{2^{2m_2-2} \times 2^{2m_2-2}} \circ ((\otimes E^{2(m_2-2)}) \otimes (G \otimes E \otimes E \otimes E))_{2^{2m_2-2} \times 2^{2m_2-2}} \\
&= (\otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-2} \otimes (E \otimes E))_{2^{2m_2-2} \times 2^{2m_2-2}} \\
&\quad \circ (\otimes(E \otimes E)^{m_2-2} \otimes (G \otimes E) \otimes (E \otimes E))_{2^{2m_2-2} \times 2^{2m_2-2}} \\
&= \otimes[(G \circ E) \otimes (E \circ E)]^{m_2-2} \otimes (E \circ G) \otimes (E \circ (E \otimes E \otimes E)) \\
&= \otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-2} \otimes (G \otimes E) \otimes (E \otimes E) \\
&= \otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-1} \otimes (\otimes E^2).
\end{aligned}$$

(ii) The following property of matrices is required and detailed proofs are omitted: For any two 2×2 matrices A and B,

$$P(A \otimes B)P = B \otimes A, \quad (3.43)$$

where P is given by Eq. (3.21). Equation (3.37) is proven by induction on m_2 . When $m_2 = 2$, by Theorem 3.1.10,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times 2 \times 2} &= \mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}^t \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2} \mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2} \\
&= (P_{4;2})^t \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2} P_{4;2} \\
&= (I_2 \otimes P \otimes I_2)((G \otimes E) \otimes (E \otimes E))(I_2 \otimes P \otimes I_2) \\
&= G \otimes (P(E \otimes E)P) \otimes E \\
&= G \otimes E \otimes E \otimes E
\end{aligned}$$

by Eq. (3.43).

Now, Eq. (3.37) is assumed to hold for $m_2 - 1$;

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2} = (\otimes G^{m_2-2}) \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2}).$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2} &= \mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2}^t \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} \mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} \\
&= [(P_{2m_2;2} P_{2m_2;4} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-2})(P_{2m_2;3} P_{2m_2;5} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-3}) \cdots (P_{2m_2;m_2})]^t \\
&\quad \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} [(P_{2m_2;2} P_{2m_2;4} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-2})(P_{2m_2;3} P_{2m_2;5} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-3}) \cdots (P_{2m_2;m_2})] \\
&= (P_{2m_2;m_2}) \cdots (P_{2m_2;3} P_{2m_2;5} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-3}) [(P_{2m_2;2} P_{2m_2;4} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-2}) \\
&\quad (\otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-1} \otimes (\otimes E^2))(P_{2m_2;2} P_{2m_2;4} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-2})] (P_{2m_2;3} P_{2m_2;5} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-3}) \cdots (P_{2m_2;m_2}) \\
&= (P_{2m_2;m_2}) \cdots (P_{2m_2;3} P_{2m_2;5} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-3}) [G \otimes (\otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-2} \otimes (\otimes E^2)) \otimes E] \\
&\quad (P_{2m_2;3} P_{2m_2;5} \cdots P_{2m_2;2m_2-3}) \cdots (P_{2m_2;m_2}) \\
&= G \otimes \{(P_{2(m_2-1);m_2-1}) \cdots (P_{2(m_2-1);2} P_{2(m_2-1);4} \cdots P_{2(m_2-1);2(m_2-1)-2}) [\otimes(G \otimes E)^{m_2-1}] \\
&\quad (P_{2(m_2-1);2} P_{2(m_2-1);4} \cdots P_{2(m_2-1);2(m_2-1)-2}) \cdots (P_{2(m_2-1);m_2-1})\} \otimes E \\
&= G \otimes (\mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2}^t \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2} \mathbb{P}_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2}) \otimes E \\
&= G \otimes \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times (m_2-1) \times 2} \otimes E \\
&= G \otimes ((\otimes G^{m_2-2}) \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2})) \otimes E \\
&= (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2+1}).
\end{aligned}$$

(iii) For a fixed m_2 , these results are proven by induction on $m_3 \geq 2$. Assume that Eq. (3.38) holds for $m_3 - 1$;

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3-1)} = \otimes((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3-2} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2}).$$

Then, by Eq. (3.32),

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3} &= \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3-1)} \circ ((\otimes E^{m_2(m_3-2)}) \otimes \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2}) \\
&= [\otimes((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3-2} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2})] \circ [(\otimes E^{m_2(m_3-2)}) \otimes (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2+1})] \\
&= \otimes((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3-2} \otimes ((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2+1})) \\
&= \otimes((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3-1} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2}).
\end{aligned}$$

For the maximum eigenvalue $\lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3}$, equation (3.41) is easily verified. Equation (3.39) is established for fixed m_3 using Eq. (3.38), yielding

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times (m_2+1) \times m_3} &= \otimes((\otimes G^{m_2}) \otimes E)^{m_3-1} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2+1}) \\
&= (G \otimes (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3-1} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2} \otimes E),
\end{aligned}$$

which implies

$$\lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2+1,m_3} = 2g^{m_3-1} \lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3},$$

see [13], [29] and [30].

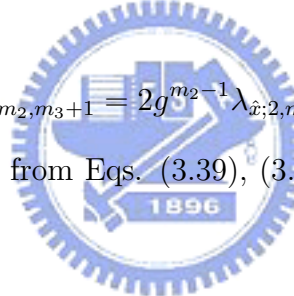
Similarly, for a fixed m_2 , equation (3.40) is proven using Eq. (3.38) again:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+1)} &= \otimes((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2}) \\
&= \otimes((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E) \otimes \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3},
\end{aligned}$$

which implies

$$\lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3+1} = 2g^{m_2-1} \lambda_{\hat{x};2,m_2,m_3}.$$

Finally, equation (3.42) follows from Eqs. (3.39), (3.40) and Theorem 3.1.13. The proof is thus complete. \square



3.2 Connecting Operator

This section introduces the connecting operator and employs it to derive a recursive formula between an elementary pattern of order $(m_1, m_2, m_3 + 1)$ and that of order (m_1, m_2, m_3) . It is also adopted to obtain a lower bound on entropy.

3.2.1 Connecting operator in z -direction

This subsection derives connecting operators and studies their properties. For brevity, only the connecting operator in the z -direction is discussed but the other cases are similar, and will be considered in the following Remarks. For clarity, as in the former section, two symbols on lattice $\mathbf{Z}_{2 \times 2 \times 2}$ are examined first.

According to Theorem 3.1.11, the transition matrix $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ can be represented as $A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \alpha}$, where $1 \leq \alpha \leq 2^{2m_2}$, is a $2^{m_2(m_3-1)} \times 2^{m_2(m_3-1)}$ matrix.

For matrix multiplication, the indices of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ are conveniently expressed as

$$\begin{bmatrix} A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; 11} & A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; 12} & \cdots & A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; 12^{m_2}} \\ A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; 21} & A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; 22} & \cdots & A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; 22^{m_2}} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; 2^{m_2}1} & A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; 2^{m_2}2} & \cdots & A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; 2^{m_2}2^{m_2}} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Clearly, $A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \alpha} = A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \beta_1 \beta_2}$, where $\alpha = \alpha(\beta_1, \beta_2) = 2^{m_2}(\beta_1 - 1) + \beta_2$. For $m_1 \geq 2$, the elementary pattern in the entries of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1}$ is given by

$$A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \beta_1 \beta_2} A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \beta_2 \beta_3} \cdots A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \beta_{m_1} \beta_{m_1+1}}$$

where $\beta_r \in \{1, 2, \dots, 2^{m_2}\}$ and $1 \leq r \leq m_1 + 1$. A lexicographic order for multiple indices $I_{m_1+1} = (\beta_1 \beta_2 \cdots \beta_{m_1} \beta_{m_1+1})$ is introduced, using

$$\mathcal{K}(I_{m_1+1}) = 1 + \sum_{r=2}^{m_1} 2^{m_2(m_1-r)} (\beta_r - 1). \quad (3.44)$$

Now, $A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha}^{(k)}$ can be represented by

$$A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \beta_1 \beta_2} A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \beta_2 \beta_3} \cdots A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \beta_{m_1} \beta_{m_1+1}}, \quad (3.45)$$

where

$$\alpha = \alpha(\beta_1, \beta_{m_1+1}) = 2^{m_2}(\beta_1 - 1) + \beta_{m_1+1}$$

and

$$k = \mathcal{K}(I_{m_1+1})$$

is as in Eq. (3.44). Accordingly, $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1}$ can be expressed as

$$[A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}}, \quad (3.46)$$

where $1 \leq \alpha \leq 2^{2m_2}$ and

$$A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha} = \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha}^{(k)}. \quad (3.47)$$

Moreover,

$$V_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha} = (A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha}^{(k)})^t, \quad (3.48)$$

where $1 \leq k \leq 2^{m_2(m_1-1)}$, $V_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha}$ is a $2^{m_2(m_1-1)}$ column vector that comprises all elementary patterns in $A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha}$. The ordering matrix $\mathbb{V}_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3}$ of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1}$ is now defined as

$$[V_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}}, \quad (3.49)$$

where $1 \leq \alpha \leq 2^{2m_2}$. The ordering matrix $\mathbb{V}_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3}$ allows the elementary patterns to be tracked during the reduction from $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+1)}^{m_1}$ to $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1}$. This careful book-keeping constitutes a systematic way to generate the admissible patterns, and as in Sec. 3.2.2, lower-bound estimates of spatial entropy.

This simplest example is considered first to illustrate this concept.

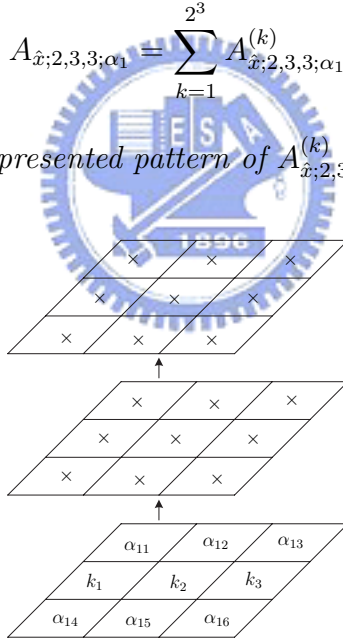
Example 3.2.1. For $m_1 = 2$, $m_2 = 3$, $m_3 = 3$, the following can be easily verified;

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times 3 \times 3}^2 = [A_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1}]_{2^3 \times 2^3},$$

where $1 \leq \alpha_1 \leq 2^6$ and

$$A_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1} = \sum_{k=1}^{2^3} A_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1}^{(k)},$$

and for fixed α_1 and k the represented pattern of $A_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1}^{(k)}$ are in the following form.



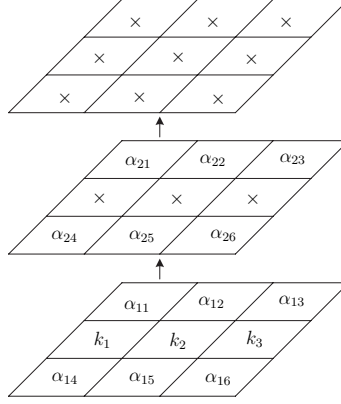
If the red symbol is defined equal to 1, and white symbol equals 0, then $\alpha_1 = 2^5\alpha_{11} + 2^4\alpha_{12} + 2^3\alpha_{13} + 2^2\alpha_{14} + 2\alpha_{15} + \alpha_{16} + 1$ and $k = 2^2k_1 + 2k_2 + k_3 + 1$. Hence

$$V_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1} = (A_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1}^{(k)})^t,$$

where $1 \leq k \leq 2^3$ and $1 \leq \alpha_1 \leq 2^6$. Define

$$V_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1;\alpha_2} = (A_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1;\alpha_2}^{(k)})^t,$$

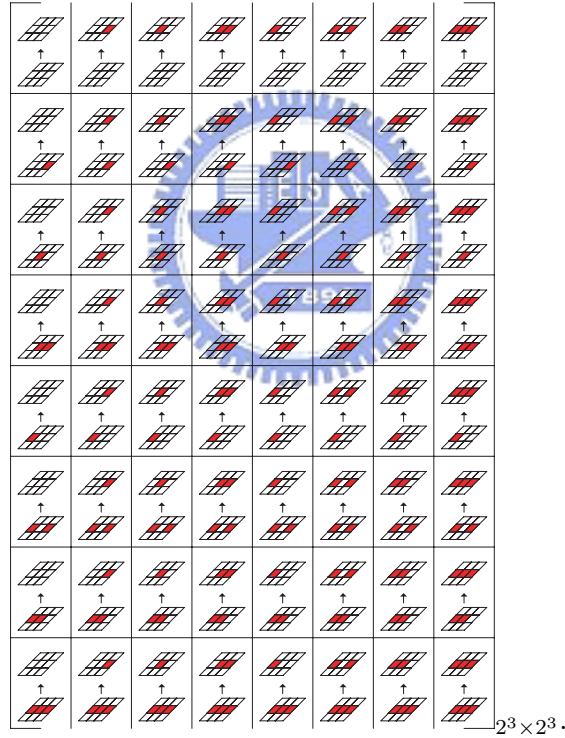
where $1 \leq k \leq 2^3$ and $1 \leq \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \leq 2^6$ and the represented pattern of $A_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1;\alpha_2}^{(k)}$ is



Therefore, for instance,

$$V_{\hat{x};2,3,3;1;1} = S_{\hat{x};m_3;2,3;11} V_{\hat{x};2,3,2;1;1}$$

and the represented patterns of $S_{\hat{x};m_3;2,3;11}$



The above derivation reveals that $V_{\hat{x};2,3,3;\alpha_1;\alpha_2}$ can be reduced to $V_{\hat{x};2,3,2;\alpha_2}$ by multiplication using connecting operator $S_{\hat{x};m_3;2,3;\alpha_1\alpha_2}$. This procedure can be extended to introduce the connecting operator $\mathbb{S}_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2} = [S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_1\alpha_2}]^4$, where $1 \leq \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \leq 2^{2m_2}$, for all $m_1 \geq 2, m_2 \geq 2$.

Definition 3.2.2. For $m_1 \geq 2, m_2 \geq 2$, define

$$(\mathbb{C}_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2})_{2^{2m_2} \times 2^{2m_2}} = (\mathbb{S}_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2}^{(r)})_{2^{2m_2} \times 2^{2m_2}}, \quad (3.50)$$

⁴Use $S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_1\alpha_2}$ to substitute $S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_1,\alpha_2}$ for simplicity afterward.

where the row matrix $\mathbb{S}_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2}^{(r)}$ of $\mathbb{S}_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2}$ is defined in Eq. (3.6) and Eq. (3.7). And

$$\begin{aligned} & C_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;i_1i_2} \\ &= \left[(A_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1})_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}} \circ (A_{z;(m_1-1) \times m_2 \times 2})_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}} \right]_{2^{(m_1-1)m_2} \times 2^{(m_1-1)m_2}} \\ & \circ (E_{2^{(m_1-2)m_2}} \otimes ((A_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2})_{i_2}^{(c)})_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}})_{2^{(m_1-1)m_2} \times 2^{(m_1-1)m_2}} \end{aligned} \quad (3.51)$$

where $(A_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2})_{i_2}^{(c)}$ is the i_2 -th block of the matrix $(A_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2})^{(r)}$, $(A_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2})^{(c)}$ is the column matrix of $A_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2}^{(r)}$, $A_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2}^{(r)}$ is the row matrix of $A_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2}$ and E_k is the $2^k \times 2^k$ matrix with 1 as its entries.

Remark 3.2.3. By a similar method, the following connecting operators can also be defined.

$$\begin{aligned} & C_{x;m_2;m_1m_3;i_1i_2} \\ &= \left[(A_{y;2 \times 2 \times m_3; i_1})_{2^{m_3} \times 2^{m_3}} \circ (A_{y;(m_1-1) \times 2 \times m_3})_{2^{m_3} \times 2^{m_3}} \right]_{2^{(m_1-1)m_3} \times 2^{(m_1-1)m_3}} \\ & \circ (E_{2^{(m_1-2)m_3}} \otimes ((A_{y;2 \times 2 \times m_3})_{i_2}^{(c)})_{2^{m_3} \times 2^{m_3}})_{2^{(m_1-1)m_3} \times 2^{(m_1-1)m_3}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & C_{\hat{y};m_3;m_1m_2;i_1i_2} \\ &= \left[(A_{\hat{z};m_1 \times 2 \times 2; i_1})_{2^{m_1} \times 2^{m_1}} \circ (A_{\hat{z};m_1 \times (m_2-1) \times 2})_{2^{m_1} \times 2^{m_1}} \right]_{2^{(m_2-1)m_1} \times 2^{(m_2-1)m_1}} \\ & \circ (E_{2^{(m_2-2)m_1}} \otimes ((A_{\hat{z};m_1 \times 2 \times 2})_{i_2}^{(c)})_{2^{m_1} \times 2^{m_1}})_{2^{(m_2-1)m_1} \times 2^{(m_2-1)m_1}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & C_{y;m_1;m_2m_3;i_1i_2} \\ &= \left[(A_{x;2 \times 2 \times m_3; i_1})_{2^{m_3} \times 2^{m_3}} \circ (A_{x;2 \times (m_2-1) \times m_3})_{2^{m_3} \times 2^{m_3}} \right]_{2^{(m_2-1)m_3} \times 2^{(m_2-1)m_3}} \\ & \circ (E_{2^{(m_2-2)m_3}} \otimes ((A_{x;2 \times 2 \times m_3})_{i_2}^{(c)})_{2^{m_3} \times 2^{m_3}})_{2^{(m_2-1)m_3} \times 2^{(m_2-1)m_3}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & C_{\hat{z};m_2;m_1m_3;i_1i_2} \\ &= \left[(A_{\hat{y};m_1 \times 2 \times 2; i_1})_{2^{m_1} \times 2^{m_1}} \circ (A_{\hat{y};m_1 \times 2 \times (m_3-1)})_{2^{m_1} \times 2^{m_1}} \right]_{2^{(m_3-1)m_1} \times 2^{(m_3-1)m_1}} \\ & \circ (E_{2^{(m_3-2)m_1}} \otimes ((A_{\hat{y};m_1 \times 2 \times 2})_{i_2}^{(c)})_{2^{m_1} \times 2^{m_1}})_{2^{(m_3-1)m_1} \times 2^{(m_3-1)m_1}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & C_{z;m_1;m_2m_3;i_1i_2} \\ &= \left[(A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1})_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}} \circ (A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3-1)})_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}} \right]_{2^{(m_3-1)m_2} \times 2^{(m_3-1)m_2}} \\ & \circ (E_{2^{(m_3-2)m_2}} \otimes ((A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2})_{i_2}^{(c)})_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}})_{2^{(m_3-1)m_2} \times 2^{(m_3-1)m_2}} \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 3.2.4. For any $m_2 \geq 2$, $m_3 \geq 2$ and $1 \leq i_1, i_2 \leq 2^{2m_2}$,

$$C_{\hat{x};m_3;(m_1+1)m_2;i_1i_2} = [a_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1} C_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;i_1i_2}], \quad (3.52)$$

where $1 \leq i \leq 2^{2m_2}$.

Proof. By Theorem 3.1.11 and Remark 3.1.12,

$$A_{z;m_1 \times m_2 \times 2} = [A_{z;2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1} \circ A_{z;(m_1-1) \times m_2 \times 2}],$$

where $1 \leq i_1 \leq 2^{2m_2}$. Hence, by

$$\begin{aligned}
& C_{\hat{x}; m_3; (m_1+1)m_2; i_1 i_2} \\
&= [(A_{z; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1}) \circ \mathbb{A}_{z; m_1 \times m_2 \times 2}] \circ [E_{2^{(m_1-1)m_2}} \otimes (A_{z; 2 \times m_2 \times 2}^{(r)})_{i_2}^{(c)}] \\
&= [a_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1 i} (A_{z; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; i} \circ \mathbb{A}_{z; (m_1-1) \times m_2 \times 2})] \\
&\quad \circ [E_{2^{m_2}} \otimes (E_{2^{(m_1-2)m_2}} \otimes (A_{z; 2 \times m_2 \times 2}^{(r)})_{i_2}^{(c)})] \\
&= [a_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1 i} C_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; i i_2}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}}
\end{aligned}$$

where $1 \leq i \leq 2^{2m_2}$. The proof is complete. \square

Notably, Eq. (3.52) implies $C_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; ij}$ is

$$a_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_1 i_2} a_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_2 i_3} \cdots a_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; i_{m_1} i_{m_1+1}}$$

with $i_1 = i$ and $i_{m_1+1} = j$. $C_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; ij}$ comprises all paths of length $m_1 + 1$, that start at i and end at j . Indeed, the entries of $C_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2}$ and $\mathbb{A}_{z; (m_1+1) \times m_2 \times 2}$ are the same. However, the arrangements differ.

Substituting m_3 for $m_3 + 1$ into Eq. (3.45) and using Eq. (3.32), $A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3+1; \alpha}^{(k)}$ could be represented by

$$\begin{aligned}
& A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+1); \beta_1 \beta_2} A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+1); \beta_2 \beta_3} \cdots A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+1); \beta_{m_1} \beta_{m_1+1}} \\
&= \prod_{j=1}^{m_1} [a_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; \alpha_j \hat{\alpha}} A_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times m_3; \hat{\beta}_1 \hat{\beta}_2}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}}, \tag{3.53}
\end{aligned}$$

where $1 \leq \hat{\beta}_1, \hat{\beta}_2 \leq 2^{m_2}$ and $\alpha_j = \alpha(\beta_j, \beta_{j+1})$ and $\hat{\alpha} = \alpha(\hat{\beta}_1, \hat{\beta}_2)$ for $1 \leq j \leq m_1$.

After m_1 matrix multiplications have been performed as in Eq. (3.53),

$$A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3+1; \alpha_1}^{(k)} = [A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3+1; \alpha_1; \alpha_2}^{(k)}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}}, \tag{3.54}$$

where $1 \leq \alpha_2 \leq 2^{2m_2}$ and $A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3+1; \alpha_1; \alpha_2}^{(k)}$ can be represented by

$$\sum_{\ell=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} K(\hat{x}, m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2; k, \ell) A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha_2}^{(\ell)} \tag{3.55}$$

which is a linear combination of $A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3; \alpha_2}^{(\ell)}$ with the coefficients $K(\hat{x}, m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2; k, \ell)$ which are products of $a_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times 2; \alpha_j \hat{\alpha}}$, $1 \leq j \leq m_1$. $K(\hat{x}, m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2; k, \ell)$ must be studied in more details. Notably,

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+1)}^{m_1} = [A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3+1; \alpha_1}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}} \tag{3.56}$$

where $1 \leq \alpha_1 \leq 2^{2m_2}$,

$$A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3+1; \alpha_1} = \sum_{k=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3+1; \alpha_1}^{(k)}$$

and

$$\sum_{k=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, (m_3+1); \alpha_1}^{(k)} = \left[\sum_{k=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, (m_3+1); \alpha_1; \alpha_2}^{(k)} \right]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}},$$

and $A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha_2}^{(\ell)}$ as the pattern,

$$(3.63)$$

From Definition 3.2.2, $S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_1\alpha_2}$ represents the following pattern

$$(3.64)$$

Therefore, Eq. (3.60) follows from Eqs. (3.62), (3.63) and (3.64). Also, from Eq. (3.58), equation (3.59) follows.

Next, equation (3.61) follows simply from Eqs. (3.62) and (3.64). \square

For any positive integer $p \geq 2$, applying Theorem 3.2.5 p times allows the elementary patterns of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+p)}^{m_1}$ to be expressed as products of a sequence of $S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_i\alpha_{i+1}}$ and the elementary patterns in $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}^{m_1}$. The elementary pattern in $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+p)}^{m_1}$ is first considered. For any $p \geq 2$ and $1 \leq q \leq p-1$, define

$$\begin{aligned} & A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3+p;\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_q}^{(k)} \\ &= [A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3+p;\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_q;\alpha_{q+1}}^{(k)}]_{2^{m_2} \times 2^{m_2}}, \end{aligned}$$

where $1 \leq \alpha_{q+1} \leq 2^{2m_2}$. Then $A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3+p;\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_{p+1}}^{(k)}$ can be represented as

$$\sum_{\ell_2=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \sum_{\ell_3=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \cdots \sum_{\ell_{p+1}=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \left(\prod_{i=2}^{p+1} K(\hat{x};m_1m_2;\alpha_{i-1}\alpha_i;\ell_{i-1},\ell_i) \right) A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha_{p+1}}^{(\ell_{p+1})} \quad (3.65)$$

where and $\ell_1 = k$ can be easily verified.

Hence, for any $p \geq 2$, equation (3.56) can be generalized for $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+p)}^{m_1}$ as a $(2^{m_2})^{p+1} \times (2^{m_2})^{p+1}$ matrix

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+p)}^{m_1} = [A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,(m_3+p);\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_{p+1}}], \quad (3.66)$$

where

$$A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,(m_3+p);\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_{p+1}} = \sum_{k=1}^{2^{(m_1-1)m_2}} A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,(m_3+1);\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_{p+1}}^{(k)}.$$

In particular, if $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{p+1} \in \{2^{m_2}(s-1)+s \mid 1 \leq s \leq 2^{m_2}\}$ then $A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,(m_3+p);\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_{p+1}}$ lies on the diagonal of $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times (m_3+p)}^{m_1}$ in Eq. (3.66). Now, define

$$V_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3+p;\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_{p+1}} = (A_{m_1,m_2,m_3+p;\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_{p+1}}^{(k)})^t.$$

Therefore, Theorem 3.2.5 can be generalized to the following Theorem.

Theorem 3.2.6. *For any $m_1 \geq 2$, $m_2 \geq 2$, $m_3 \geq 2$ and $p \geq 1$, $V_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3+p;\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_{p+1}}$ could be represented as*

$$S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_1\alpha_2} S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_2\alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_p\alpha_{p+1}} V_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha_{p+1}}$$

where $1 \leq \alpha_i \leq 2^{2m_2}$ and $1 \leq i \leq p+1$.

Proof. From Eqs. (3.65), (3.58) and (3.60),

$$\begin{aligned} & A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3+p;\alpha_1;\alpha_2;\dots;\alpha_{p+1}}^{(k)} \\ &= \sum_{\ell_2=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \sum_{\ell_3=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \cdots \sum_{\ell_{p+1}=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \left(\prod_{i=2}^{p+1} K(\hat{x}; m_1 m_2; \alpha_{i-1} \alpha_i; \ell_{i-1}, \ell_i) \right) A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha_{p+1}}^{(\ell_{p+1})} \\ &= \sum_{\ell_2=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \sum_{\ell_3=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \cdots \sum_{\ell_{p+1}=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \left(\prod_{i=2}^{p+1} (S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_{i-1}\alpha_i})_{\ell_{i-1}\ell_i} \right) A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha_{p+1}}^{(\ell_{p+1})} \\ &= \sum_{\ell_2=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \sum_{\ell_3=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \cdots \sum_{\ell_{p+1}=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \left((S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_1\alpha_2})_{\ell_1\ell_2} (S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_2\alpha_3})_{\ell_2\ell_3} \right. \\ & \quad \left. \cdots (S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_p\alpha_{p+1}})_{\ell_p\ell_{p+1}} \right) A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha_{p+1}}^{(\ell_{p+1})} \\ &= \sum_{\ell_{p+1}=1}^{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}} \left(S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_1\alpha_2} S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_2\alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2;\alpha_p\alpha_{p+1}} \right)_{k\ell_{p+1}} A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha_{p+1}}^{(\ell_{p+1})}. \end{aligned}$$

The proof is complete. □

3.2.2 Lower bound of entropy

In this subsection, the connecting operator $\mathbb{C}_{\hat{x};m_3;m_1m_2}$ is adopted to estimate the lower bound of entropy and in particular, to confirm that is positive. The following notation is used.

Definition 3.2.7. Let $V = (V_1, \dots, V_M)^t$, where V_k are $N \times N$ matrices. Define the sum over V_k as

$$|V| = \sum_{k=1}^N V_k. \quad (3.67)$$

If $\mathbb{M} = [M_{ij}]$ is a $M \times M$ matrix, then

$$|\mathbb{M}V| = \sum_{i=1}^M \sum_{j=1}^M M_{ij} V_j$$

Notably, (3.67) implies

$$|V_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha}| = \sum_{k=1}^{2^{(m_1-1)m_2}} A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha}^{(k)} = A_{\hat{x};m_1,m_2,m_3;\alpha}.$$

As is typical, the set of all matrices with the same order can be partially ordered.

Definition 3.2.8. Let $\mathbb{M} = [M_{ij}]$ and $\mathbb{N} = [N_{ij}]$ be two $M \times M$ matrices; $\mathbb{M} \geq \mathbb{N}$ if $M_{ij} \geq N_{ij}$ for all $1 \leq i, j \leq M$.

Notably, if $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2} \geq \mathbb{A}'_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}$, then $\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3} \geq \mathbb{A}'_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ for all $m_2, m_3 \geq 2$. Therefore, $h(\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}) \geq h(\mathbb{A}'_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2})$. Hence, the spatial entropy as a function of $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}$ is monotonic with respect to the partial order \geq .

Definition 3.2.9. A $P + 1$ multiple index

$$\mathcal{A}_P \equiv (\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_P \alpha_{P+1}) \quad (3.68)$$

is called a periodic cycle if

$$\alpha_{P+1} = \alpha_1, \quad (3.69)$$

where $1 \leq \alpha_i \leq 2^{2m_2}$ and $1 \leq i \leq P + 1$. It is called diagonal cycle if Eq. (3.69) holds and

$$\alpha_i \in \{2^{m_2}(s-1) + s | 1 \leq s \leq 2^{m_2}\}$$

for each $1 \leq i \leq P + 1$. For a diagonal cycle Eq. (3.68)

$$\bar{\alpha}_P = \alpha_1; \alpha_2; \cdots; \alpha_P$$

and

$$\bar{\alpha}_P^n = \bar{\alpha}_P; \bar{\alpha}_P; \cdots; \bar{\alpha}_P. \quad (n\text{-times})$$

First, prove the following Lemma.

Lemma 3.2.10. *Let $m_1 \geq 2$, $m_2 \geq 2$, $P \geq 1$, \mathcal{A}_P be a diagonal cycle. Then, for any $m_3 \geq 1$,*

$$\begin{aligned} & \rho(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times (m_3 P + 2)}^{m_1}) \\ & \geq \rho(|(S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_{P+1}})^{m_3} V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, 2; \alpha_1}|). \end{aligned} \quad (3.70)$$

Proof. Since \mathcal{A}_P is a periodic cycle, Theorem 3.2.6 implies

$$\begin{aligned} & V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3 P + 2; \bar{\alpha}_P^{m_3}; \alpha_1} \\ & = (S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_{P+1}})^{m_3} V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, 2; \alpha_1}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.71)$$

Furthermore, \mathcal{A}_P is diagonal and $|V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3 P + 2; \bar{\alpha}_P^{m_3}; \alpha_1}| = A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3 P + 2; \bar{\alpha}_P^{m_3}; \alpha_1}$ lies in the diagonal part of Eq. (3.66), with $m_3 + p = m_3 P + 2$. Accordingly,

$$\rho(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3 P + 2}^{m_1}) \geq \rho(|V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, m_3 P + 2; \bar{\alpha}_P^{m_3}; \alpha_1}|). \quad (3.72)$$

Therefore, equation (3.70) follows from Eqs. (3.71) and (3.72). The proof is complete. \square

The following Lemma is useful in evaluating maximum eigenvalue of Eq. (3.70).

Lemma 3.2.11. *For any $m_1 \geq 2$, $m_2 \geq 2$, $1 \leq k \leq 2^{(m_1-1)m_2}$ and $\alpha_1 \in \{(s-1)2^{m_2} + s | 1 \leq s \leq 2^{m_2}\}$, if*

$$\text{tr}(A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, 2; \alpha_1}^{(k)}) = 0,$$

then for all $1 \leq \ell \leq 2^{(m_1-1)m_2}$,

$$(S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2})_{k\ell} = 0, \quad (3.73)$$

for all $\alpha_2 \in \{(s-1)2^{m_2} + s | 1 \leq s \leq 2^{m_2}\}$, such that the k -th rows of matrices $S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2}$ are zeros. For any diagonal cycle \mathcal{A}_P , let $U = (u_1 u_2 \cdots u_{2^{m_2(m_1-1)}})$ be an eigenvector of $S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_1}$. If $u_k \neq 0$ for some $1 \leq k \leq 2^{(m_1-1)m_2}$, then $\text{tr}(A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, 2; \alpha_1}^{(k)}) > 0$.

Proof. Since $A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, 2; \alpha_1}^{(k)}$ can be expressed as Eq. (3.61). $\text{tr}(A_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, 2; \alpha_1}^{(k)}) = 0$ if and only if Eq. (3.73) holds for all $1 \leq \ell \leq 2^{(m_1-1)m_2}$. The second part of the Lemma 3.2.11 follows easily from the first part. The proof is complete. \square

By Lemma 3.2.10 and Lemma 3.2.11, the lower bound of entropy can be determined as follows.

Theorem 3.2.12. *Let $\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_P \alpha_1$ be a diagonal cycle. Then, for any $m_1 \geq 2$, $m_2 \geq 2$,*

$$\begin{aligned} & h(\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) \\ & \geq \lim_{m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_1 m_2 P} \log \rho(S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_1}). \end{aligned} \quad (3.74)$$

Proof. First, by the methods used to prove Lemma 2.1.10, Lemma 2.1.11 and Theorem 2.1.12 in Sec. 2.1.2,

$$\begin{aligned} \limsup_{m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_3} (\log \rho(|(S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_1})^{m_3} V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, 2; \alpha_1}|)) \\ = \log \rho(S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_1}) \end{aligned} \quad (3.75)$$

is obtained. The detailed proofs are omitted here for brevity. Now,

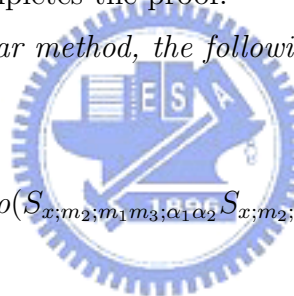
$$h(\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) \geq \lim_{m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_1 m_2 P} \limsup_{m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_3} (\log \rho(|(S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_1})^{m_3} V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, 2; \alpha_1}|))$$

is established. Indeed, from Eqs. (3.33) and (3.70),

$$\begin{aligned} h(\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) &= \lim_{m_2 m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{(m_3 P + 2) m_2} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times (m_3 P + 2)}) \\ &= \lim_{m_2 m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_1 (m_3 P + 2) m_2} \log \rho(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x}; 2 \times m_2 \times (m_3 P + 2)}^{m_1}) \\ &\geq \lim_{m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_1 m_2 P} \limsup_{m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_3} (\log \rho(|(S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_1})^{m_3} V_{\hat{x}; m_1, m_2, 2; \alpha_1}|)). \end{aligned}$$

Applying Eq. (3.75) which completes the proof. \square

Remark 3.2.13. *By the similar method, the following lower bounds of entropy can also be estimated.*



$$\begin{aligned} &h(\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) \\ &\geq \lim_{m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_1 m_3 P} \log \rho(S_{x; m_2; m_1 m_3; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{x; m_2; m_1 m_3; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{x; m_2; m_1 m_3; \alpha_P \alpha_1}). \\ &h(\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) \\ &\geq \lim_{m_1 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_1 m_2 P} \log \rho(S_{\hat{y}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{y}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{y}; m_3; m_1 m_2; \alpha_P \alpha_1}). \\ &h(\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) \\ &\geq \lim_{m_3 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_2 m_3 P} \log \rho(S_{y; m_1; m_2 m_3; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{y; m_1; m_2 m_3; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{x}; m_1; m_2 m_3; \alpha_P \alpha_1}). \\ &h(\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) \\ &\geq \lim_{m_1 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_1 m_3 P} \log \rho(S_{\hat{z}; m_2; m_1 m_3; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{\hat{z}; m_2; m_1 m_3; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{\hat{z}; m_2; m_1 m_3; \alpha_P \alpha_1}). \\ &h(\mathbb{A}_{x; 2 \times 2 \times 2}) \\ &\geq \lim_{m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{m_2 m_3 P} \log \rho(S_{z; m_1; m_2 m_3; \alpha_1 \alpha_2} S_{z; m_1; m_2 m_3; \alpha_2 \alpha_3} \cdots S_{z; m_1; m_2 m_3; \alpha_P \alpha_1}). \end{aligned}$$

Remark 3.2.14. *The results in last three sections can be generated to p -symbols on $\mathbb{Z}_{2\ell \times 2\ell \times 2\ell}$ such as in two dimensional case [4] and [5] and the details are omitted here for brevity.*

3.3 Applications to 3DCNN

This section elucidates an interesting model in 3DCNN of the application of the method. The method is elucidated by considering $a_{0,0,0} = a$, $a_{1,0,0} = a_x$, $a_{0,1,0} = a_y$ and $a_{0,0,1} = a_z$, which are nonzero; in other cases, $a_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma}$ and $b_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma}$ are zero. Then, the 3DCNN is of the form as Eq. (1.41)

$$\frac{du_{i,j,k}}{dt} = -u_{i,j,k} + w + af(u_{i,j,k}) + a_x f(u_{i+1,j,k}) + a_y f(u_{i,j+1,k}) + a_z f(u_{i,j,k+1}).$$

The stationary solution to Eq. (1.41) satisfies

$$u_{i,j,k} = w + av_{i,j,k} + a_x v_{i+1,j,k} + a_y v_{i,j+1,k} + a_z v_{i,j,k+1},$$

for $(i, j, k) \in \mathbf{Z}^3$ as in Eq. (1.42).

Firstly, consider the mosaic solution $u = (u_{i,j,k})$ to Eq. (1.42). If $u_{i,j,k} \geq 1$, i.e., $v_{i,j,k} = 1$, then

$$(a - 1) + w + a_x v_{i+1,j,k} + a_y v_{i,j+1,k} + a_z v_{i,j,k+1} \geq 0. \quad (3.76)$$

If $u_{i,j,k} \leq -1$, i.e., $v_{i,j,k} = -1$, then

$$(a - 1) - w - (a_x v_{i+1,j,k} + a_y v_{i,j+1,k} + a_z v_{i,j,k+1}) \geq 0. \quad (3.77)$$

Equation (1.42) has five parameters w , a , a_x , a_y and a_z . Three procedures are adopted to partition these parameters:

Procedure (I): The parameters a_x , a_y and a_z are initially expressed into three-dimensional coordinates, to solve Eqs. (3.76) and (3.77), as in Fig. 3.

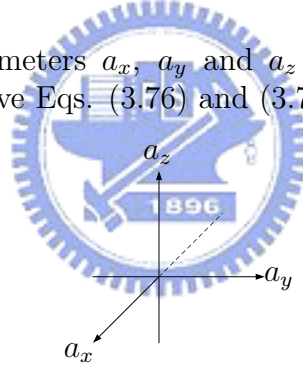


Figure 3: Primary partition of (a_x, a_y, a_z) .

Clearly 2^3 octants (I)~(VIII) exist in (a_x, a_y, a_z) three-dimensional coordinates.

Procedure (II): In each octant are $3!$ relations

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(i)} & : |a_x| > |a_y| > |a_z|, \\ \text{(ii)} & : |a_x| > |a_z| > |a_y|, \\ \text{(iii)} & : |a_y| > |a_x| > |a_z|, \\ \text{(iv)} & : |a_y| > |a_z| > |a_x|, \\ \text{(v)} & : |a_z| > |a_x| > |a_y|, \\ \text{(vi)} & : |a_z| > |a_y| > |a_x|. \end{aligned} \quad (3.78)$$

Procedure (III): Each relations, denoted it by $|a_1| > |a_2| > |a_3|$, two situations apply

$$\begin{aligned} (1) & |a_1| > |a_2| + |a_3| \\ (2) & |a_1| < |a_2| + |a_3|. \end{aligned} \quad (3.79)$$

However, in the (a, w) -planes, two sets of 2^3 straight lines are important. The first set is

$$\ell_r^+ : (a - 1) + w + a_x v_{i+1,j,k} + a_y v_{i,j+1,k} + a_z v_{i,j,k+1} = 0.$$

which is related to Eq. (3.76). The second set is

$$\ell_r^- : (a - 1) - w - (a_x v_{i+1,j,k} + a_y v_{i,j+1,k} + a_z v_{i,j,k+1}) = 0.$$

which is related to Eq. (3.77), where $v_{i+1,j,k}, v_{i,j+1,k}, v_{i,j,k+1} \in \{-1, 1\}$ and $1 \leq r \leq 8$. When (a_x, a_y, a_z) lines in the open region (I)~(VIII), (i)~(vi) and (1)~(2) as in Fig. 3, Eqs. (3.78) and (3.79) are used to partition the $(w, a - 1)$ -plane, as in Fig. 4.

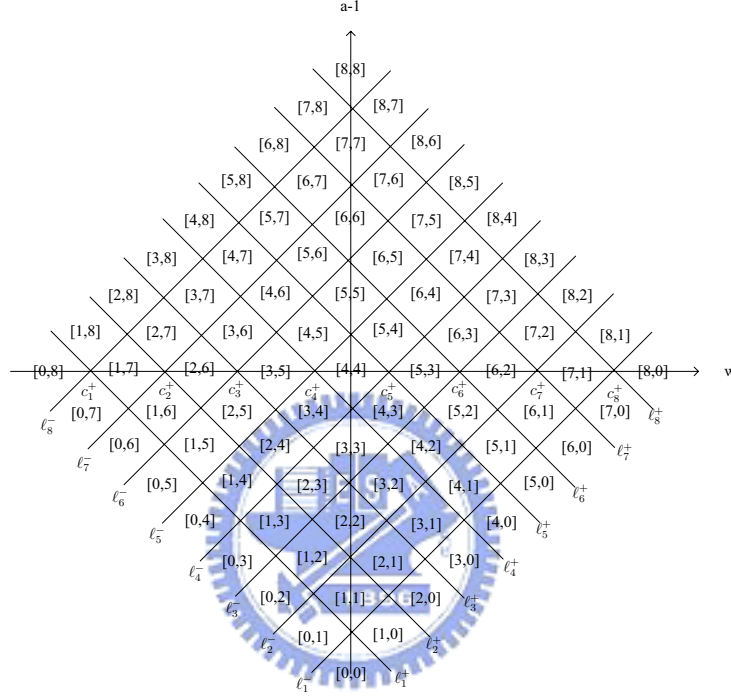


Figure 4: Partition of $(w, a - 1)$ -plane.

The symbols $[m,n]$ in Fig. 4 have the following meanings. Consider, for example, (a_x, a_y, a_z) lies in regions (VIII), (i) and (1) as in Fig. 3, Eq. (3.78) and Eq. (3.79). This situation is expressed as (VIII)-(i)-(1), and considered $a_x < a_y < a_z < 0$ and $|a_x| > |a_y| + |a_z|$. Denoted by

	$(v_{i+1,j,k}, v_{i,j+1,k}, v_{i,j,k+1})$	$-(a_x v_{i+1,j,k} + a_y v_{i,j+1,k} + a_z v_{i,j,k+1})$
$c_1^+ = c_8^-$	$(-1, -1, -1)$	$a_x + a_y + a_z$
$c_2^+ = c_7^-$	$(-1, -1, 1)$	$a_x + a_y - a_z$
$c_3^+ = c_6^-$	$(-1, 1, -1)$	$a_x - a_y + a_z$
$c_4^+ = c_5^-$	$(-1, 1, 1)$	$a_x - a_y - a_z$
$c_5^+ = c_4^-$	$(1, -1, -1)$	$-a_x + a_y + a_z$
$c_6^+ = c_3^-$	$(1, -1, 1)$	$-a_x + a_y - a_z$
$c_7^+ = c_2^-$	$(1, 1, -1)$	$-a_x - a_y + a_z$
$c_8^+ = c_1^-$	$(1, 1, 1)$	$-a_x - a_y - a_z$

Table 1: The intersects of ℓ_i^+ and ℓ_j^- .

Then, $c_8^+ > c_7^+ > c_6^+ > c_5^+ > 0 > c_4^+ > c_3^+ > c_2^+ > c_1^+ >$ are the intersects of ℓ_i^+ and ℓ_j^- on the w -axis displayed in Fig. 4.

With reference to the local patterns on cube-cells, +1 is represented by the symbol + and -1 is represented by the symbol -. The 2^4 local patterns can be listed and ordered, as in Fig. 5.

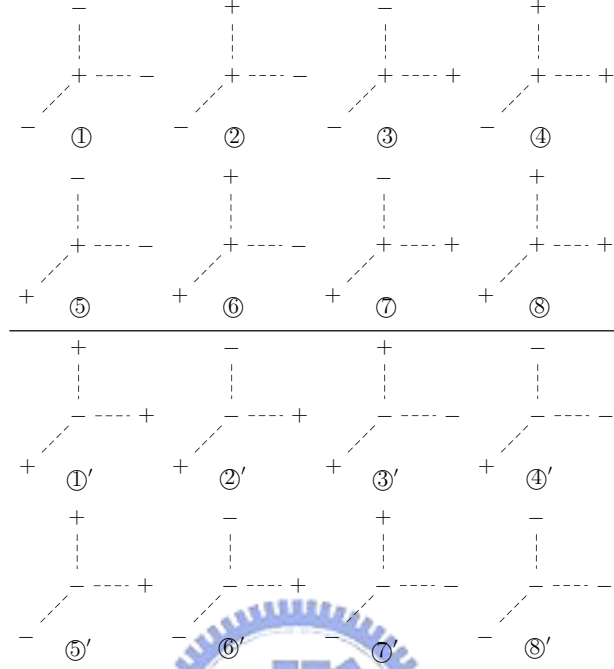


Figure 5: Ordering of local patterns in partition (VIII)-(i)-(1).

Now, when $(a-1, w)$ lies in region $[m, n]$ in Fig. 4, the only admissible patterns are exactly $\textcircled{1}, \textcircled{2}, \dots, \textcircled{m}$ and $\textcircled{1}', \textcircled{2}', \dots, \textcircled{n}'$. For instance, in region (VIII)-(i)-(1) and $(w, a-1) \in [4, 8]$ only $\textcircled{1}, \textcircled{2}, \textcircled{3}, \textcircled{4}$ and $\textcircled{1}', \textcircled{2}', \textcircled{3}', \textcircled{4}'$ can be produced. This fact is equivalent to the holding of inequalities in Eqs. (3.76) and (3.77) if and only if $v_{i,j,k}, v_{i+1,j,k}, v_{i,j+1,k}$ and $v_{i,j,k+1}$ are of the form $\textcircled{1}, \textcircled{2}, \textcircled{3}, \textcircled{4}$ and $\textcircled{1}', \textcircled{2}', \textcircled{3}', \textcircled{4}'$.

Next, the transition matrix of local patterns in region (VIII)-(i)-(1)-[4,8] can be derived as

$$\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2} = G \otimes E \otimes E \otimes E.$$

Then, according to Proposition 3.1.15, the admissible local patterns in $\Sigma_{2 \times m_2 \times m_3}$ and its corresponding transition matrices are

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times m_2 \times 2} &= \otimes (G \otimes E)^{m_2-1} \otimes (\otimes E^2), \\ \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2} &= (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2+1}), \\ \mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3} &= \otimes ((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3-1} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2}), \end{aligned}$$

as in Eqs. (3.36), (3.37) and (3.38).

Finally, the connecting operator is adopted to examine the complexity of the set of mosaic patterns in 3DCNN. That is, the lower bound of spatial entropy in the region (VIII)-(i)-(1)-[4,8] can be estimated.

Proposition 3.3.1. Consider $\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2} = G \otimes E \otimes E \otimes E$, then

$$S_{z;m_1;m_2 2;11} = C_{z;m_1;m_2 2;11} = (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E,$$

$$\rho(S_{z;m_1;m_2 2;11}) = 2g^{m_2-1}$$

and

$$h(\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}) \geq \frac{1}{2} \log g,$$

where $g = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$ is the golden-mean. Moreover, since

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3} = \otimes((\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E)^{m_3-1} \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2})$$

and

$$\rho(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times m_3}) = 2^{m_2+m_3-1} g^{(m_2-1)(m_3-1)},$$

the spatial entropy can be exactly computed as

$$h(\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}) = \log g$$

as in Proposition 3.1.15.

Proof. According to Eq. (3.37),

$$\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2} = (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes (\otimes E^{m_2+1})$$

is obtained. Evidently,

$$A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2;1} = \otimes E^{m_2}$$

and

$$(\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2})_{;1}^{(c)} = (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E.$$

By Remark 3.2.3, the connecting operator

$$\begin{aligned} C_{z;m_1;m_2 2;11} &= A_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2;1} \circ (\mathbb{A}_{\hat{x};2 \times m_2 \times 2})_{;1}^{(c)} \\ &= (\otimes G^{m_2-1}) \otimes E. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, based on Remark 3.2.13, the lower bound of spatial entropy is estimated as

$$\begin{aligned} h(\mathbb{A}_{x;2 \times 2 \times 2}) &\geq \lim_{m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2m_2} \log \rho(S_{z;m_1;m_2 2;11}) \\ &= \lim_{m_2 \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log 2g^{m_2-1}}{2m_2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \log g. \end{aligned}$$

□

Remark 3.3.2. For the general template $A = (a_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma})$ where $a_{\alpha,\beta,\gamma} \neq 0$, the basic set in $\Sigma_{3 \times 3 \times 3}$ must be extend to the basic set in $\Sigma_{4 \times 4 \times 4}$. Then, the method described above can be applied, as stated in Remark 3.2.14. The details are omitted here for brevity.

References

- [1] Ban, J.-C., Chien K.-P., Hsu C.-H. & Lin S.-S. [2001] "Spatial disorder of CNN-with asymmetric output function", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos* **11**, 2085-2095.
- [2] Ban J.-C., Hsu C.-H. & Lin S.-S. [2002] "Spatial disorder of cellular neural network-with biased term", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos* **12**, 525-534.
- [3] Ban J.-C., Lin S.-S. & Shih C.-W. [2001] "Exact number of mosaic patterns in one-dimensional cellular neural networks", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos* **11**, 1645-1653.
- [4] Ban J.-C. & Lin S.-S. [2005] "Patterns generation and transition matrices in multi-dimensional lattice models", *Discrete Contin. Dyn. Syst.* **13**(3), 637-658.
- [5] Ban J.-C., Lin S.-S. & Lin Y.-H. [2006a] "Patterns generation and spatial entropy in two-dimensional lattice models", *Asian Journal of Mathematics*, to appear.
- [6] Ban J.-C., Lin S.-S. & Lin Y.-H. [2006b] "Primitivity of subshifts of finite type in two-dimensional lattice models", preprint.
- [7] Ban J.-C., Lin S.-S. & Lin Y.-H. [2007a] "Three-dimensional Cellular Neural Networks and Patterns Generation Problems", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos*, to appear.
- [8] Ban J.-C., Lin S.-S. & Lin Y.-H. [2007b] "Patterns Generation and Spatial Entropy in Three-dimensional Lattice Models: Trace Operators", preprint.
- [9] Bates P. W. & Chmaj A. [1999] "A discrete convolution model for phase transitions", *Arch. Rat. Mech. Anal* **150**, 281-305.
- [10] Bates P. W., Lu K. & Wang B. [2001] "Attractors for lattice dynamical systems", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos* **11**, 143-153.
- [11] Bell J. [1981] "Some threshold results for modes of myelinated nerves", *Math. Biosci.* **54**, 181-190.
- [12] Bell J. & Cosner C. [1984] "Threshold behavior and propagation for nonlinear differential-difference systems motivated by modeling myelinated axons", *Quart. Appl. Math.* **42**, 1-14.
- [13] Bellman R. [1970] *Introduction to matrix analysis*, (McGraw-Hill, N.Y.).
- [14] Baxter R. J. [1971] "Eight-vertex model in lattice statistics", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **26**, 832-833.
- [15] Cahn J. W. [1960] "Theory of crystal growth and interface motion in crystalline materials", *Acta Metallurgica* **8**, 554-562.
- [16] Chow S.-N. & Mallet-Paret J. [1995] "Pattern formation and spatial chaos in lattice dynamical systems II", *IEEE Trans. Circuits Systems* **42**, 752-756.

- [17] Chow S.-N., Mallet-Paret J. & Van Vleck E. S. [1996a] "Dynamics of lattice differential equations", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos* **6**, 1605-1621.
- [18] Chow S.-N., Mallet-Paret J. & Van Vleck E.S. [1996b] "Pattern formation and spatial chaos in spatially discrete evolution equations", *Random Comput. Dynam.* **4**, 109-178.
- [19] Chua L.-O. [1998] *CNN: A paradigm for complexity* (World Scientific Series on Non-linear Science, Series A,31. World Scietific, Singapore).
- [20] Chua L.-O., Crounse K. R., Hasler M. & Thiran P. [1995] "Pattern formation properties of autonomous cellular neural networks", *IEEE Trans. Circuits Systems* **42**, 757-774.
- [21] Chua L.-O. & Roska T. [1993] "The CNN paradigm", *IEEE Trans. Circuits Systems* **40** 147-156.
- [22] Chua L.-O. & Yang L. [1988a] "Cellular neural networks: Theory", *IEEE Trans. Circuits Systems* **35**, 1257-1272.
- [23] Chua L.-O. & Yang L. [1988b] "Cellular neural networks: Applications", *IEEE Trans. Circuits Systems* **35**, 1273-1290.
- [24] Ermentrout G. B. [1992] "Stable periodic solutions to discrete and continuum arrays of weakly coupled nonlinear oscillators", *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* **52**, 1665-1687.
- [25] Ermentrout G. B. & Kopell N. [1994] "Inhibition-produced patterning in chains of coupled nonlinear oscillators", *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* **54**, 478-507.
- [26] Ermentrout G. B., Kopell N. & Williams T. L. [1991] "On chains of oscillators forced at one end", *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* **51**, 1397-1417.
- [27] Eveneux T. & Laplante J. P. [1992] "Propagation failure in arrays of coupled bistable chemical reactors", *J. Phys. Chem.* **96**, 4931-4934.
- [28] Firth W. J. [1988] "Optical memory and spatial chaos", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **61**, 329-332.
- [29] Gantmacher F.R. [1959] *The theory of matrices* (2 vols. Chelsea, New York)
- [30] Horn R. A. & Johnson C. R. [1990] *Matrix analysis* (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge)
- [31] Hsu C.-H., Juang J., Lin S.-S., & Lin W.-W. [2000] "Cellular neural networks: local patterns for general template", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos* **10**, 1645-1659.
- [32] Itoh M. & Chua L.-O. [2003] "Equivalent CNN cell models and patterns", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos Appl. Sci. Engrg.* **13**(5), 1055-1161.
- [33] Itoh M. & Chua L.-O. [2005] "Image processing and self-organizing CNN", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos Appl. Sci. Engrg.* **15**(9), 2939-2958.
- [34] Juang J. & Lin S.-S. [2000] "Cellular Neural Networks: Mosaic pattern and spatial chaos", *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* **60**, 891-915.

- [35] Juang J., Lin S.-S., Lin W.-W. & Shieh S.-F. [2000] "The spatial entropy of two-dimensional subshifts of finite type", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos* **10**, 2845-2852.
- [36] Keener J. P. [1987] "Propagation and its failure in coupled systems of discrete excitable cells", *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* **47**, 556-572.
- [37] Keener J. P. [1991] "The effects of discrete gap junction coupling on propagation in myocardium", *J. Theor. Biol.* **148**, 49-82.
- [38] Kimball A. L., Varghese A. & Winslow R.L. [1993] "Simulating cardiac sinus and atrial network dynamics on the connection machine", *Phys. D* **64**, 281-298.
- [39] Lieb E. H. [1967a] "Exact solution of the problem of the entropy of two-dimensional ice", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **18**, 692-694.
- [40] Lieb E. H. [1967b] "Exact solution of the f model of an antiferroelectric", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **18**, 1046-1048.
- [41] Lieb E. H. [1967c] "Exact solution of the two-dimensional slater KDP model of a ferroelectric", *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **19**, 108-110.
- [42] Lieb E. H. [1967d] "The residual entropy of square ice", *Phys. Rev.* **162**, 162-172.
- [43] Lieb E. H. [1970] "Ice, ferro- and antiferroelectrics, in methods and problems in theoretical physics", *in honour of R.E. Peierls, proceedings of the 1967 Birmingham conference* (North-Holland) 21-28.
- [44] Lin S.-S. & Yang T.-S. [2000] "Spatial entropy of one-dimensional cellular neural network", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos* **10**, 2129-2140.
- [45] Lin S.-S. & Yang T.-S. [2002] "On the spatial entropy and patterns of two-dimensional cellular neural networks", *International J. of Bifurcation and Chaos* **12**, 115-128.
- [46] Lind D. & Marcus B. [1995] *An introduction to symbolic dynamics and coding*, (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge).
- [47] Lindenmayer A. & Prusinkiewicz P. [1990] *The algorithmic beauty of plants* (Springer-Verlag, New York).
- [48] Markley N. G. & Paul M. E. [1979] "Maximal measures and entropy for Z^ν subshifts of finite type", *Classical mechanics and dynamical systems, Medford, Mass.*, 135-157. (Lecture Notes in Pure and Appl. Math, Dekker, New York) **70** (1981).
- [49] Markley N. G. & Paul M. E. [1981] "Matrix subshifts for Z^ν symbolic dynamics", *Proc. London Math. Soc.*, **43**(3), 251-272.
- [50] Onsager L. [1944] "Crystal statistics. I. A two-dimensional model with an order-disorder transition", *Phys. Rev.* **65**, 117-149.
- [51] Yang C.-N. & Yang C.-P. [1966a] "One-dimensional chain of anisotropic spin-spin interactions. I. Proof of Bethe's hypothesis for ground state in a finite system", *Phys. Rev.* **150**, 321-327.

- [52] Yang C.-N. & Yang C.-P. [1966b] "One-dimensional chain of anisotropic spin-spin interactions. II. Properties of the ground-state energy per lattice site for an infinite system", *Phys. Rev.* **150**, 327-339.
- [53] Yang C.-N. & Yang C.-P. [1966c] "One-dimensional chain of anisotropic spin-spin interactions. III. Applications", *Phys. Rev.* **151**, 258-264.

